

09/445193

FORM PTO-1390  
(REV 11-98)

U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

ATTORNEY'S DOCKET NUMBER  
2470USOPTRANSMITTAL LETTER TO THE UNITED STATE  
DESIGNATED/ELECTED OFFICE (DO/EO/US),  
CONCERNING A FILING UNDER 35 U.S.C. 371

U.S. APPLICATION NO. (If known, see 37 CFR 1.5

522 Rec'd PCT/PTO 02 DEC 1999

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION NO

PCT/JP98/02482 ✓

INTERNATIONAL FILING DATE

June 4, 1998 ✓

PRIORITY DATE CLAIMED

June 5, 1997

TITLE OF INVENTION

Heterocyclic Compounds, Their Production and Use

APPLICANT(S) FOR DO/EO/US

S. OHKAWA et al. ✓

Applicant herewith submits to the United States Designated/Elected Office (DO/EO/US) the following items and other information:

1. ☒ This is a **FIRST** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371.
2. ☐ This is a **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** submission of items concerning a filing under 35 U.S.C. 371
3. ☐ This express request to begin national examination procedures (35 U.S.C. 371(f)) at any time rather than delay examination until the expiration of the applicable time limit set in 35 U.S.C. 371(b) and PCT Articles 22 and 39(1)
4. ☒ A proper Demand for International Preliminary Examination was made by the 19th month from the earliest claimed priority date.
5. ☒ A copy of the International Application as filed (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)) \*
  - a. ☒ is transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
  - b. ☐ has been transmitted by the International Bureau.
  - c. ☐ is not required, as the application was filed in the United States Receiving Office (RO/US).
6. ☐ A translation of the International Application into English (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(2)).
7. ☐ Amendments to the claims of the International Application under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3))
  - a. ☐ are transmitted herewith (required only if not transmitted by the International Bureau).
  - b. ☐ have been transmitted by the International Bureau.
  - c. ☐ have not been made; however, the time limit for making such amendments has NOT expired.
  - d. ☐ have not been made and will not be made.
8. ☐ A translation of the amendments to the claims under PCT Article 19 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(3)).
9. ☒ An oath or declaration of the inventor(s) (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(4)).
10. ☐ A translation of the annexes to the International Preliminary Examination Report under PCT Article 36 (35 U.S.C. 371(c)(5)).

Items 11. to 16. below concern document(s) or information included:

11. ☐ An Information Disclosure Statement under 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98.
12. ☒ An assignment document for recording. A separate cover sheet in compliance with 37 CFR 3.28 and 3.31 is included.
13. ☒ A **FIRST** preliminary amendment.  
☐ A **SECOND** or **SUBSEQUENT** preliminary amendment.
14. ☐ A substitute specification.
15. ☐ A change of power of attorney and/or address letter.
16. ☐ Other items or information:

\*This includes specification 131 total pages,  
including claims 1-23.

Express Mail Label #: EJ918098693US



17. ☒ The following fees are submitted:**BASIC NATIONAL FEE ( 37 CFR 1.492 (a) (1) - (5) ) :**

Neither international preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482)  
nor international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO  
and International Search Report not prepared by the EPO or JPO ..... \$970.00

International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to  
USPTO but International Search Report prepared by the EPO or JPO. .... \$840.00

International preliminary examination fee (37 CFR 1.482) not paid to USPTO but  
international search fee (37 CFR 1.445(a)(2)) paid to USPTO ..... \$760.00

International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482)  
but all claims did not satisfy provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) ..... \$670.00

International preliminary examination fee paid to USPTO (37 CFR 1.482)  
and all claims satisfied provisions of PCT Article 33(1)-(4) ..... \$96.00

**ENTER APPROPRIATE BASIC FEE AMOUNT =**

CALCULATIONS PTO USE ONLY

\$ 840.00

Surcharge of \$130.00 for furnishing the oath or declaration later than ☐ 20 ☐ 30  
months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(e)).

\$

CLAIMS	NUMBER FILED	NUMBER EXTRA	RATE
Total claims	23 - 20 =	3	X \$18.00
Independent claims	6 - 3 =	3	X \$78.00
MULTIPLE DEPENDENT CLAIM(S) (if applicable)			+ \$260.00

\$ 54.00

\$ 234.00

\$

**TOTAL OF ABOVE CALCULATIONS =**

\$ 1128.00

Reduction of 1/2 for filing by small entity, if applicable. A Small Entity Statement  
must also be filed (Note 37 CFR 1.9, 1.27, 1.28).

\$

**SUBTOTAL =**

\$ 1128.00

Processing fee of \$130.00 for furnishing the English translation later than ☐ 20 ☐ 30  
months from the earliest claimed priority date (37 CFR 1.492(f)).

\$

**TOTAL NATIONAL FEE =**

\$ 1128.00

Fee for recording the enclosed assignment (37 CFR 1.21(h)). The assignment must be  
accompanied by an appropriate cover sheet (37 CFR 3.28, 3.31). \$40.00 per property +

\$ 40.00

**TOTAL FEES ENCLOSED =**

\$ 1168.00

Amount to be:  
refunded

\$

charged

\$

a. ☐ A check in the amount of \$\_\_\_\_\_ to cover the above fees is enclosed.b. ☒ Please charge my Deposit Account No. 500799 in the amount of \$ 1168.00 to cover the above fees.  
A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.c. ☒ The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any additional fees which may be required, or credit any  
overpayment to Deposit Account No. 500799. A duplicate copy of this sheet is enclosed.

**NOTE:** Where an appropriate time limit under 37 CFR 1.494 or 1.495 has not been met, a petition to revive (37 CFR  
1.137(a) or (b)) must be filed and granted to restore the application to pending status.

SEND ALL CORRESPONDENCE TO:

Philippe Y. Riesen  
Intellectual Property Department  
Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd.  
17-85, Jusohonmachi 2-chome  
Yodogawa-ku, Osaka 532-8686 JAPAN  
Phone/Fax: 81-6-6300-6124/6601 (Japan)

E-mail : riesen\_philippe@takeda.co.jp

SIGNATURE:

Philippe Y. Riesen

NAME

35,657

REGISTRATION NUMBER

Date: November 30, 1999



IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant(s): S. Ohkawa et al.  
Serial No. : Attn: Box PCT  
Filed on :  
Title : Heterocyclic Compounds, Their Production and Use

PRELIMINARY AMENDMENT

Assistant Commissioner for Patents  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Sir:

Preliminary to examination please amend the above-identified application as follows:

IN THE SPECIFICATION:

Page 1, line 6, delete "and the compounds" and substitute therefor --which compounds--

Page 1, line 8, delete "cell" and substitute therefor --cells--

Page 1, line 10, delete "cell" and substitute therefor --cells--

Page 1, line 14, delete "of" and substitute therefor --to, or--

Page 1, line 26, after "but" insert --for the--

Page 1, line 27, delete "part of" and substitute therefor --part,--

Page 1, line 28, before "the" insert --has--

Page 1, line 34, delete "could" and substitute therefor --does--

Page 2, line 23, delete "to cause" and substitute therefor --which causes--

Page 2, line 24, delete "and this"

Page 3, lines 8-9, delete "obtained the conclusion" and substitute therefor --confirmed this--

Page 8, line 11, delete "biosyntheses" and substitute therefor --biosynthesis--

Page 22, line 24, before "R<sup>3</sup>" insert --wherein--

Page 23, line 16, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--

Page 23, line 21, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--

Page 24, line 12, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--



Page 25, line 3, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 26, line 35, delete "of"  
Page 27, line 22, after "in" insert --a--  
Page 35, line 35, delete "Preferred" and substitute therefor --A preferred--  
Page 37, line 3, delete "Preferred" and substitute therefor --A preferred--  
Page 42, line 13, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 42, line 18, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 42, line 29, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 43, line 9, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 43, line 37, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 45, line 33, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 46, line 2, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 46, line 13, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 46, line 26, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 47, line 17, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Page 72, line 17, delete "cooled" and substitute therefor --cooling--  
Page 73, line 1, delete "cooled" and substitute therefor --cooling--  
Page 74, line 30, delete "cooled" and substitute therefor --cooling--  
Page 106, line 19, delete "neuroblastoma" and substitute therefor --neuroblastoma--  
Page 106, line 24, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--

IN THE CLAIMS:

Claim 4, page 123, line 3, before "R<sup>3</sup>" insert --wherein--  
Claim 10, page 123, line 29, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Claim 10, page 124, line 1, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Claim 10, page 124, line 12, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Claim 10, page 124, line 25, delete "form" and substitute therefor --from--  
Claim 11, page 125, line 17, delete "form" and substitute therefor



--from--

Claim 14, page 127, line 13, delete "of"

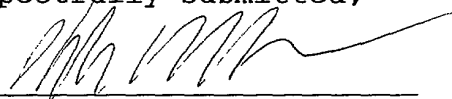
Claim 22, page 128, line 29, after "in" insert --a--

Claim 23, page 129, line 27, delete "Use of" and substitute therefor --A method of using--

REMARKS

The above amendments correct typographical and clerical errors and do not constitute new matter. Entry of the above amendments prior to examination is respectfully requested. Early action on the merits is earnestly solicited.

Respectfully submitted,



Philippe Y. Riesen  
Registration No. 35,657  
Attorney for Applicants

C/O Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd.  
17-85 Jusohonmachi 2-chome  
Yodogawa-ku, Osaka, Japan 532-8686  
Phone #: 81-6-6300-6124  
Fax # : 81-6-6300-6601

Date: November 30, 1999



## DESCRIPTION

## Heterocyclic Compounds, Their Production and Use

TECHNICAL FIELD

5       The present invention relates to heterocyclic  
compounds, their production and use, and the compounds  
suppress cell toxicities caused by  $\beta$ -amyloid protein,  
protect nerve cell, and are useful for preventing  
and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases by  
10   protecting nerve cell from other inducers of cell death.

BACKGROUND ART

Neurodegenerative diseases are progressive  
disorders that cause fatal damage of nerve cell death.  
15   As principal neurodegenerative diseases, known are  
Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, amyotrophic  
lateral sclerosis (ALS), Huntington's chorea,  
peripheral nervous system disorders such as typically  
diabetic neuropathy, etc. Most of those are related to  
20   aging, and, in fact, cases that present the symptoms of  
those diseases increase with aging. However, middle-  
aged and even young-aged cases may often present the  
symptoms of those diseases.

As a result of studies relating to the structure  
and function of brains, the roles of neurotransmitters  
and neurotrophins are being gradually clarified, but  
most part of the causes of neurodegenerative diseases  
are still unknown. Only for Parkinson's disease, the  
relation between it and a specific neurotransmitter,  
30   dopamine has been clarified. L-dopa, which is a  
precursor of dopamine, is used as a medicine for  
Parkinson's disease. L-dopa relieves the neuropathic  
manifestation of Parkinson's disease, and maintains  
function. However, L-dopa could not suppress the  
35   progress of neurodegeneration in cases of Parkinson's  
disease, and it gradually loses its potency with the



progress of the manifestation of the disease, or that is, with the degeneration and death of dopamine-based nerve cells. Alzheimer's disease results in the degeneration and death of many types of nerve cells  
5 such as acetylcholine-based nerve cells and monoamine-based nerve cells. For this disease, some cholinesterase inhibitors are commercially available and some others are in the development stage. However, those are still within the range of symptomatic  
10 treatment for temporarily relieving the neuropathic manifestation of Alzheimer's disease, like L-dopa for Parkinson's disease.

As has been mentioned above, no medicines have been reported for protecting nerve cells from the  
15 toxicity of factors causing cell death thereby to suppress the progress of neurodegenerative diseases including Alzheimer's disease and Parkinson's disease.

It is said that the cell death in neurodegenerative diseases is caused by the toxicity of  
20 factors that are intrinsic to the respective diseases. For Alzheimer's disease, for example, it is believed that the intrinsic  $\beta$ -amyloid in the disease is a factor to cause cell death.  $\beta$ -amyloid is a protein seen in the brains of cases of Alzheimer's disease, and this constitutes senile lentigines that are characteristic  
25 of the disease in neuropathology, and is composed of from 40 to 43 amino acids. It has been clarified that, when  $\beta$ -amyloid is added to the primary culture of hippocampus nerve cells, this kills the cells (see  
30 Science, Vol. 245, pp. 417-420, 1989); and it has been reported that the coagulation of  $\beta$ -amyloid is indispensable for the expression of its toxicity (see Neurobiology of Aging, Vol. 13, pp. 587-590, 1992; and Journal of Molecular Biology, Vol. 218, pp. 149-163,  
35 1991). For the toxicity expression mechanism of  $\beta$ -



amyloid, the following (1) to (4) may be taken into consideration: (1)  $\beta$ -amyloid forms ion channels, through which calcium ions run into nerve cells. (2)  $\beta$ -amyloid promotes the generation of free radicals. (3)  $\beta$ -amyloid activates tau-protein kinase I (TPK-I) whereby phosphorylation of tau is promoted. (4)  $\beta$ -amyloid activates microglia, which thereby secretes neurotoxin. However, no one has as yet obtained the conclusion.

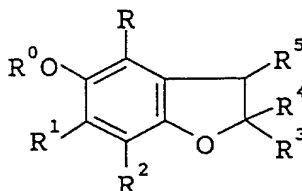
10 Recently, it has been clarified that neurotrophins such as IGF-1 (insulin-like growth factor) and NGF (nerve growth factor) inhibit the apoptosis of nerve cells by  $\beta$ -amyloid or the like, and that, for its mechanism, the apoptosis inhibition is related to the inhibition of TPK-I/GSK-3 $\beta$  (glycogen synthase kinase 3) through activation of PI-3 kinase (see J. Neurosci., Vol. 11, pp. 2552-2563, 1991; Science, Vol. 267, pp. 2003-2006, 1995; and J. Biol. Chem., Vol. 272, pp. 154-161, 1997). When PI-3 kinase is inhibited by  $\beta$ -amyloid and TPK-I/GSK-3 $\beta$  is activated, then pyruvate dehydrogenase (PDH) is inhibited, while having an influence on the synthesis of acetylcholine, to thereby lower the acetylcholine content. This is supported by the decrease in the acetylcholine content of the brains of cases of Alzheimer's disease. On the contrary, when PI-3 kinase is activated, then it is expected that not only the nerve cell death is prevented but also the intracerebral acetylcholine content is increased to improve the nervous system condition. In addition, it is also expected that the inhibition of TPK-I/GSK-3 $\beta$  results in the increase in the intracerebral glucose utilization which is lowered in cases of Alzheimer's disease (see J. Biol. Chem., Vol. 269, pp. 3568-3573, 1994; and Endocrinology, Vol. 125, pp. 314-320, 1989).



Accordingly, low-molecular compounds having good permeability to the brain and having neurotrophic action may inhibit nerve cell death in cases of neurodegenerative diseases such as Alzheimer's disease, while improving the nervous system condition in those cases.

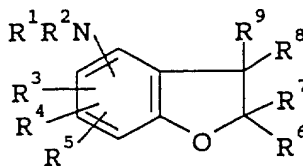
Known are the following dihydrobenzofuran compounds which are effective for neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., Parkinson's disease, Alzheimer's disease, etc.).

1) A compound of the formula:



wherein R is a lower alkyl, R⁰ is hydrogen or an acyl; R¹ and R² are the same or different and are a lower alkyl which may be substituted, or R¹ and R², taken together, are a butadienylene which may be substituted; R³ and R⁴ each is hydrogen or an alkyl which may be substituted, or R³ and R⁴, taken together, are a polymethylene; R⁵ is a lower alkyl, an aromatic group or heterocyclic group which may be substituted (EP-A-273647, JP-A-1-272578).

2) A compound of the formula:



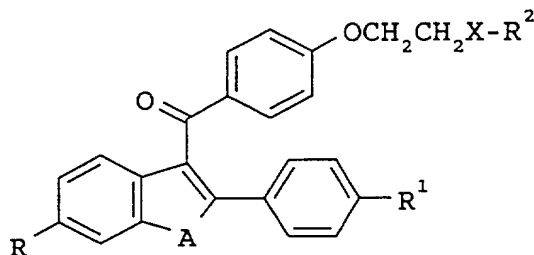
wherein R¹ and R² are the same or different and are a hydrogen atom, an acyl, an alkoxycarbonyl, an optionally substituted aliphatic group or an optionally substituted aromatic group; R³, R⁴ and R⁵ are the same or different and are an optionally acylated hydroxy, an optionally substituted amino, an optionally substituted



alkoxy or an optionally substituted aliphatic group, or two of  $R^3$ ,  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  may be linked together to form an optionally substituted carbocyclic group;  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  are the same or different and are an optionally substituted aliphatic group, provided that at least one of  $R^6$  and  $R^7$  has methylene at  $\alpha$ -position; and  $R^8$  and  $R^9$  are the same or different and are a hydrogen atom, an optionally substituted aliphatic group or an optionally substituted aromatic group, or a salt thereof (EP-A-483772, JP-A-5-140142).

Also known are the following benzofuran compounds and dihydrobenzofuran compounds.

3) A compound of the formula:

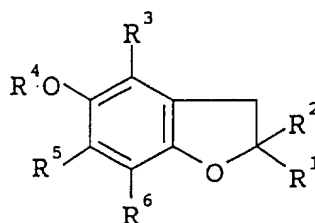


wherein A is  $-O-$ ,  $-S(O)m-$ ,  $-N(R^{11})-$ ,  $-CH_2CH_2-$ , or  $-CH=CH-$ ; m is 0, 1, or 2; X is a bond or  $C_{1-4}$  alkylidenyl;  $R^2$  is a group of the formula:  $-NR^4R^5$  wherein  $R^4$  and  $R^5$  are independently  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, etc.); R is hydroxy, halo,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-7}$  alkanoyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, phenyl, etc.;  $R^1$  is hydroxy, halo, hydrogen,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkyl,  $C_{2-7}$  alkanoyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, phenyl, etc., or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt, which is useful for the prevention and treatment of physiological

disorder associated with an  $\beta$ -amyloid such as Alzheimer's disease and Down's syndrome (WO 95/17095).

4) A compound of the formula:

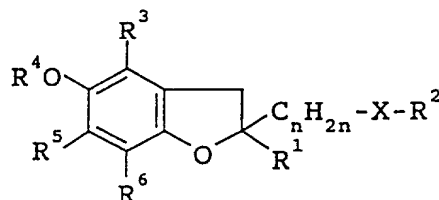




wherein  $R^1$  is hydrogen or a lower alkyl;  $R^2$  is a methyl substituted by carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, cyano, halogen, aryl or heterocyclic group, or  $C_{2-15}$  chain-like

5 hydrocarbon residue having no lower alkyl at  $\alpha$ -position which may be substituted by carboxy, alkoxycarbonyl, cyano, halogen, aryl or a heterocyclic group;  $R^3$  is a lower alkyl;  $R^4$  is hydrogen of an acyl;  $R^5$  and  $R^6$  each is a lower alkyl of a lower alkoxy, or  $R^5$  and  $R^6$ , taken together, are butadienylene, or a salt thereof, which has 5- or 12-lipoxygenase inhibiting actions (EP-A-345593, JP-A-2-76869).

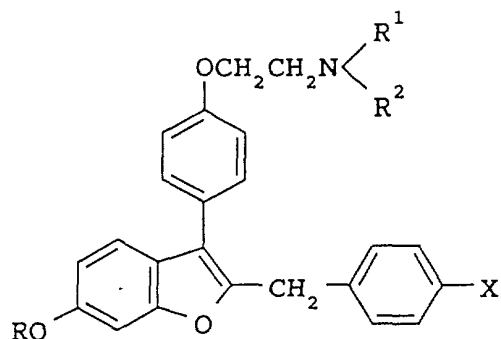
5) A compound of the formula:



15 wherein  $R^1$  is hydrogen or a lower alkyl;  $n$  is 1 to 6;  $X$  is sulfur which may be oxidized, oxygen or imino which may be substituted;  $R^2$  is methyl or an organic residue bonded through methylene, methylene or quaternary carbon;  $R^3$  is a lower alkyl;  $R^4$  is hydrogen or an acyl;  $R^5$  and  $R^6$  each is a lower alkoxy or a lower alkyl, or  $R^5$  and  $R^6$ , taken together, are butadienylene, or a salt thereof, which has a 5-lipoxygenase inhibiting action (EP-A-345592, JP-A-2-76870).

6) A compound of the formula:

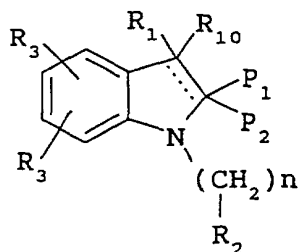




- wherein R is hydrogen or methyl; R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each are methyl or ethyl, or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> taken together are a saturated heterocyclic group; and X is bromo, chloro, fluoro or hydrogen, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, which is useful for inhibiting bone loss (EP-A-722726).

Known are the following indole compounds.

- 7) A compound of the formula:

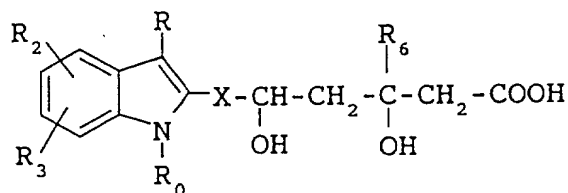


10

- wherein R<sub>1</sub> is -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>Ar, -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>8</sub> etc., R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen or Ar etc., P<sub>1</sub> is -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>8</sub>, P<sub>2</sub> is -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>8</sub> etc., R<sub>3</sub> is hydrogen, R<sub>11</sub>, OH, C<sub>1-8</sub> alkoxy, S(O)<sub>q</sub> R<sub>11</sub>, N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, Br, F, I, Cl, CF<sub>3</sub>, NHCOR<sub>6</sub>, -R<sub>11</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>R<sub>7</sub>, -XR<sub>9</sub>-Y, XY or -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>8</sub>, wherein methylene of the -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>R<sub>8</sub> may be unsubstituted or substituted by one more -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>Ar, R<sub>8</sub> is hydrogen, R<sub>11</sub> etc., R<sub>9</sub> is C<sub>1-10</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-10</sub> alkenyl, phenyl, etc., R<sub>11</sub> is C<sub>1-8</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-8</sub> alkynyl, etc., X is (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>, O, S(O)<sub>q</sub>, Y is CH<sub>3</sub> or -X(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>Ar, Ar is phenyl, naphthyl, etc., q is 0, 1 or 2, n is an integer of 0 to 6, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, which is useful for antagonizing endothelin receptors and treating cerebrovascular diseases (WO 94/14434, JP-A-8-504826).



8) A compound of the formula:

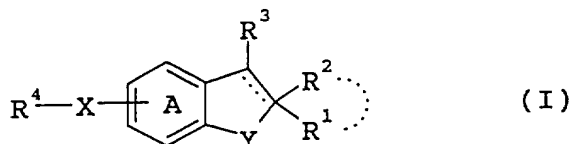


wherein one of R and R<sub>0</sub> is ,

and the other is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl or phenyl-  
 5 (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-wherein R<sub>4</sub>, R<sub>5</sub> and R<sub>5a</sub> are hydrogen, etc.; m is 1,  
 2 or 3; R<sub>2</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-4</sub> alkyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>1-4</sub>  
 alkoxy, phenoxy, benzyloxy, etc.; R<sub>3</sub> is hydrogen, C<sub>1-3</sub>  
 alkyl, C<sub>1-3</sub> alkoxy, phenoxy, benzyloxy, etc.; X is  
 10 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>- or -CH=CH-; n is 0, 1, 2 or 3; R<sub>6</sub> is hydrogen  
 or C<sub>1-3</sub> alkyl, or a salt thereof, which has cholesterol  
 biosyntheses inhibiting activity (WO 84/02131).

#### DISCLOSURE OF INVENTION

We, the present inventors have studied various  
 15 compounds and, as a result, have succeeded in the  
 creation of a novel compound of the formula:



wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each represents a hydrogen atom or a  
 hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or  
 20 R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon  
 atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring  
 which may be substituted;  
 R<sup>3</sup> represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl which may  
 be substituted or an aromatic group which may be  
 25 substituted;  
 R<sup>4</sup> represents (1) an aromatic group which may be  
 substituted, (2) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group



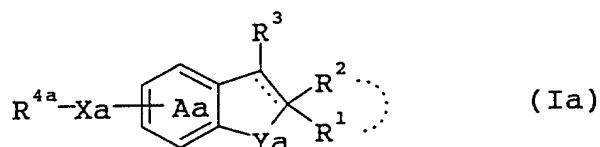
substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted or (3) an acyl;

X and Y each represents an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom which may be oxidized;

---- represents a single bond or a double bond; and ring A represents a benzene ring which may be further substituted apart from the group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$  wherein each symbol is as defined above,

provided that when X and Y are oxygen atoms and ---- is a single bond,  $R^4$  is not an acyl, or a salt thereof [hereinafter sometimes referred to briefly as compound (I)], which compound is structurally characterized in that the benzene ring which is condensed with a 5-membered heterocyclic ring is substituted by a group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$  wherein each symbol is as defined above.

We have found for the first time that compound (I), being based on its specific chemical structure, and a compound of the formula:



wherein  $R^{4a}$  represents an aromatic group which may be substituted, an aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted or an acyl;

Xa represents an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom which may be oxidized;

Ya represents an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom which may be oxidized or an imino which may be substituted;

---- represents a single bond or a double bond;

ring Aa represents a benzene ring which may be further substituted apart from (i) the group of the formula:  $-Xa-R^{4a}$  wherein each symbol is as defined above, and (ii) an amino which may be substituted,



and the other symbols are defined as above,  
 provided that when Xa and Ya are oxygen atoms and  
 ---- is a single bond, R<sup>4</sup> is not an acyl, or a salt  
 thereof [hereinafter sometimes referred to briefly as  
 5 compound (Ia)], have an unexpected, excellent  
 suppressive effect on neurodegeneration, low toxicity,  
 excellent permeability to the brain and are therefore  
 satisfactory as medicines for suppressing  
 neurodegeneration. Compound (I) is within the scope of  
 10 compound (Ia). On the basis of these findings, the  
 inventors have completed the present invention.

Specifically, the present invention relates to:

- 1) compound (I);
- 15 2) a compound of the above 1), wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each  
 is (i) a hydrogen atom or  
 (ii) a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, C<sub>3-6</sub>  
 cycloalkyl or C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl group which may be substituted  
 by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group  
 20 consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy,  
 (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7)  
 optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally  
 halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, (10)  
 25 optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (11) optionally  
 halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino,  
 (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (16)  
 di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (17) di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (18) acyl  
 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 30 carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-  
 carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-  
 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-  
 35 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and  
 C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (19) acylamino selected from the



group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (20) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (21) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (22) 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group and (23) sulfo, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkane or a 3- to 8-membered heterocyclic ring, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group;

$R^3$  is (i) a hydrogen atom, (ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl, (10) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15) mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (16) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (17) di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (18) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$



alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered  
 heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl,  
 (19) acylamino selected from the group consisting of  
 5 formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-  
 carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (20)  
 acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-  
 10 carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-  
 carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,  
 (21) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may  
 be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-  
 15 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (22) 5- to 10-  
 membered aromatic heterocyclic group and (23) sulfo, or  
 (iii) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic  
 heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms  
 selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur  
 20 and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of  
 which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms,  
 (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5)  
 optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally  
 25 halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub>  
 alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9)  
 optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally  
 halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino,  
 (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15)  
 30 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-  
 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl  
 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 35 carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-  
 carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-



carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-  
 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  
 5  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the  
 group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  
 $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (18)  
 acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$   
 10 alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-  
 carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-  
 carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,  
 (19) sulfo, (20)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and (21)  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy;  
 $R^4$  is (i) a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic  
 15 heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms  
 selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur  
 and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of  
 which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms,  
 20 (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5)  
 optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally  
 halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$   
 alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9)  
 optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10) optionally  
 25 halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino,  
 (13) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (14) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15)  
 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-  
 30 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl  
 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-  
 carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-  
 35 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-  
 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$



alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, (ii) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl and C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, which hydrocarbon group substituted by 1 to 3 C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>



alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (16) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (17) di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (18) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (19) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (20) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,



(21) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (22) 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group and (23) sulfo, or (iii) an acyl of the formula:  $-(C=O)-R^5$ ,  $-(C=O)-OR^5$ ,  $-(C=O)-NR^5R^6$ ,  $-(C=S)-NHR^5$ ,  $-SO_2-R^{5a}$  or  $-SO-R^{5a}$  wherein R<sup>5</sup> is (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18)



acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,  
 5 (19) sulfo, (20)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and (21)  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy, or  
 (c) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl or  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 5  
 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1)  
 10  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic  
 group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the  
 group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms  
 in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be  
 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of (1') halogen atoms, (2')  $C_{1-3}$   
 15 alkylenedioxy, (3') nitro, (4') cyano, (5') optionally  
 halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6') optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$   
 alkenyl, (7') optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8')  
 optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9') optionally  
 halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10') optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$   
 20  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11') hydroxy, (12') amino, (13') mono- $C_{1-6}$   
 alkylamino, (14') di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15') 5- to 7-  
 membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-  
 25 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16') acyl  
 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-  
 carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-  
 30 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-  
 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  
 $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (17') acylamino selected from the  
 35 group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  
 $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (18')



- acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19') sulfo, (20')  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and (21')  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy, (2) halogen atoms, (3)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (4) nitro, (5) cyano, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (9) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (10) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (16) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (17) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (18) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (19) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy and (20) sulfo;
- 35  $R^{5a}$  is (a) a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur



and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, or (b) a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl or C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms



in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1') halogen atoms, (2')  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3') nitro, (4') cyano, (5') optionally

5 halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6') optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7') optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8') optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9') optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10') optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11') hydroxy, (12') amino, (13') mono- $C_{1-6}$

10 alkylamino, (14') di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15') 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16') acyl

15 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-

20  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (17') acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$

25 alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (18') acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,

30 (19') sulfo, (20')  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and (21')  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy, (2) halogen atoms, (3)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (4) nitro, (5) cyano, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (8) optionally

35 halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (9) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (10) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (12) hydroxy,



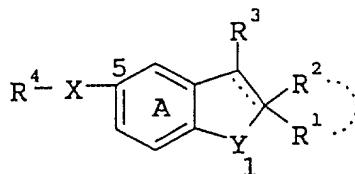
- (13) amino, (14) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (16) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (17) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (18) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (19) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy and (20) sulfo; and
- $R^6$  is a hydrogen atom or a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl; and
- ring A is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (14) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-



- membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy.
- 3) a compound of the above 1), wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each is a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted, or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted;
- 4) a compound of the above 1), R<sup>3</sup> is an aromatic group which may be substituted;
- 5) a compound of the above 1), wherein R<sup>4</sup> is (i) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted or (ii) an acyl;
- 6) a compound of the above 1), wherein X is an oxygen atom;
- 7) a compound of the above 1), wherein Y is an oxygen atom;
- 8) a compound of the above 7), wherein a group of the formula: -X-R<sup>4</sup> is substituted on the 5-position of the benzofuran ring;



9) a compound of the above 1), which is a compound of the formula:



wherein each symbol is as defined above, or a salt thereof;

10) a compound of the above 1), wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (4) hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (8) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (9) di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (10) carboxy, (11)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, (12)  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl, (13)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl, (14)  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl and (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group;

$R^3$  is a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (5) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and (6) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to



10-membered aromatic group;

$R^4$  is (i)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted by a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents

selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (8) carboxy and (9) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents

selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, which  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl may be further substituted by carboxy or  $C_{1-6}$

alkoxy-carbonyl, or

(ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents

selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,

$C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and carboxy;

X is an oxygen atom;

Y is an oxygen atom; and

ring A is a benzene ring which may be further

substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino;

11) a compound of the above 1), wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, or



$R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a piperidine which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl;

5  $R^3$  is a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino;

10  $R^4$  is (i)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted by a phenyl or pyridyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and carboxy, or

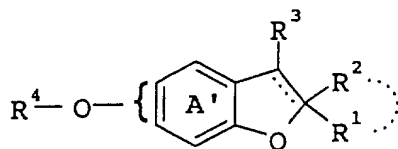
15 (ii) an acyl of the formula:  $-(C=O)-R^{5'}$  wherein  $R^{5'}$  is a phenyl or phenyl- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and carboxy;

20 X is an oxygen atom;

Y is an oxygen atom; and

ring A is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino;

12) a compound of the above 1) which is a compound of the formula:



30

wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 6-membered saturated cyclic amino substituted by a phenyl, or



R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a piperidine substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or a C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl;

R<sup>3</sup> is (i) a hydrogen atom, or

5 (ii) a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (2) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and (3) 6-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl,

10 R<sup>4</sup> is (i) a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of nitro and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, (ii) a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl group substituted by 1 to 3 of phenyl, quinolyl or pyridyl, each of which may be substituted  
15 by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, which C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl group may be further substituted by a phenyl, carboxy or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl,  
20 or

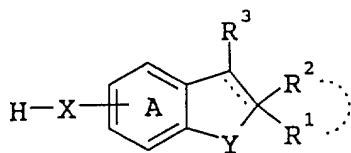
(iii) an acyl of the formula:  $-(C=O)-R^{5'}$

wherein R<sup>5'</sup> is phenyl substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy; and ring A' is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl;

25 13) a compound of the above 1) which is  
3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran,  
3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran-5-yl 4-methoxybenzoate,  
30 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran,  
3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-1',4,6,7-tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine],  
or a salt thereof;

35 14) a process for producing of compound (I), which comprises reacting a compound of the formula:





wherein each symbol is as defined above, or a salt thereof with a compound of the formula:  $R^4-L$  wherein  $L$  represents a leaving group and  $R^4$  is as defined above, or salt thereof;

15) a pharmaceutical composition which comprises compound (I);

16) a composition of the above 15) which is an agent for suppressing neurodegeneration;

10 17) a composition of the above 15) which is an agent for suppressing  $\beta$ -amyloid toxicity;

18) a composition of the above 15) which is an agent for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases;

15 19) an agent for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases which comprises compound (Ia);

20) an agent of the above 19) which is an agent for suppressing  $\beta$ -amyloid toxicity;

20 21) an agent of the above 19) which is an agent for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases;

22) a method for suppressing neurodegeneration in mammal, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of compound (Ia) with a

25 pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, carrier or diluent;

23) use of compound (Ia) for manufacturing a pharmaceutical composition for suppressing neurodegeneration; and so forth.

30

In the formulae, the "hydrocarbon group" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for  $R^1$  or  $R^2$  includes, for example, an acyclic or cyclic



hydrocarbon group such as alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, aryl, etc. Among them, C<sub>1-16</sub> acyclic or cyclic hydrocarbon group is preferable.

5 The preferred "alkyl" is for example C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The preferred "alkenyl" is for example C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl such as vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, etc.

10 The preferred "alkynyl" is for example C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl such as ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, etc.

The preferred "cycloalkyl" is for example C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.

15 The preferred "aryl" is for example C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl such as phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.

Examples of the "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" include halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), nitro, cyano, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.), optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, etc.), mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino (e.g., phenylamino, 1-naphthylamino, 2-naphthylamino, etc.), di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino, etc.), di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino (e.g., diphenylamino, etc.), acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted, 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl,

20

25

30

35



1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.), sulfo, and so forth.

5 The "hydrocarbon group" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 substituents as mentioned above at possible positions of the hydrocarbon group and, when the number of substituents is two or more, those substituents may be the same as or different from one another.

10 The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl" includes, for example, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.) which may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, 15 bromo, iodo, etc.). Concretely mentioned is methyl, chloromethyl, difluoromethyl, trichloromethyl, trifluoromethyl, ethyl, 2-bromoethyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, pentafluoroethyl, propyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyl, isopropyl, butyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutyl, 20 isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, isopentyl, neopentyl, 5,5,5-trifluoropentyl, hexyl, 6,6,6-trifluorohexyl, etc.

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl" includes, for example, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl (e.g., 25 vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, etc.) which may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.). Concretely mentioned is vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propenyl, 4,4,4-trifluoro-1-butenyl, etc. 30

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl" includes, for example, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl (e.g., ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, etc.) which may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., 35 fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.). Concretely mentioned is ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, 3,3,3-trifluoro-1-propynyl, 4,4,4-trifluoro-1-butynyl,



etc.

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl" includes, for example, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl (e.g., cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.) which may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.). Concretely mentioned is cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, 4,4-dichlorocyclohexyl, 2,2,3,3-tetrafluorocyclopentyl, 4-chlorocyclohexyl, etc.

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy" includes, for example, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy (e.g., methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.) which may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.). Concretely mentioned is methoxy, difluoromethoxy, trifluoromethoxy, ethoxy, 2,2,2-trifluoroethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, 4,4,4-trifluorobutoxy, isobutoxy, sec-butoxy, pentyloxy, hexyloxy, etc.

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio" includes, for example, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio (e.g., methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, sec-butylthio, tert-butylthio, etc.) which may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.). Concretely mentioned is methylthio, difluoromethylthio, trifluoromethylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylthio, pentylthio, hexylthio, etc.

The above-mentioned "acyl" includes, for example, formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.), C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl (e.g., cyclopropylcarbonyl, cyclopentylcarbonyl, cyclohexylcarbonyl, etc.), C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, etc.), C<sub>6-10</sub> aryl-carbonyl (e.g., benzoyl, 1-naphthoyl, 2-naphthoyl, etc.), C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-



- carbonyl (e.g., phenylacetyl, phenylpropionyl, etc.),  
 $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl (e.g., phenoxycarbonyl, etc.),  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl, phenethyloxycarbonyl, etc.), 5- or 6-membered
- 5 heterocycle carbonyl (e.g., nicotinoyl, isonicotinoyl, 2-thenoyl, 3-thenoyl, 2-furoyl, 3-furoyl, morpholinocarbonyl, thiomorpholinocarbonyl, piperidinocarbonyl, 1-pyrrolidinylcarbonyl, etc.), mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl (e.g., methylcarbamoyl,
- 10 ethylcarbamoyl, etc.), di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl (e.g., dimethylcarbamoyl, diethylcarbamoyl, ethylmethylcarbamoyl, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl (e.g., phenylcarbamoyl, 1-naphthylcarbamoyl, 2-naphthylcarbamoyl, etc.), 5- or 6-membered heterocycle
- 15 carbamoyl (e.g., 2-pyridylcarbamoyl, 3-pyridylcarbamoyl, 4-pyridylcarbamoyl, 2-thienylcarbamoyl, 3-thienylcarbamoyl, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl (e.g., methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl (e.g., phenylsulfonyl, 1-naphthylsulfonyl, 2-
- 20 naphthylsulfonyl, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl (e.g., methylsulfinyl, ethylsulfinyl, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl (e.g., phenylsulfinyl, 1-naphthylsulfinyl, 2-naphthylsulfinyl, etc.), and so forth.

- The above-mentioned "acylamino" includes, for
- 25 example, formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido (e.g., acetamido, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido (e.g., phenylcarboxamido, naphthylcarboxamido, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido (e.g., methoxycarboxamido, ethoxycarboxamido, propoxycarboxamido,
- 30 butoxycarboxamido, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino (e.g., methylsulfonylamino, ethylsulfonylamino, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino (e.g., phenylsulfonylamino, 2-naphthylsulfonylamino, 1-naphthylsulfonylamino, etc.), and so forth.

- 35 The above-mentioned "acyloxy" includes, for example,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy (e.g., acetoxy, propionyloxy, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy (e.g.,



benzoyloxy, naphthylcarbonyloxy, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy (e.g., methoxycarbonyloxy, ethoxycarbonyloxy, propoxycarbonyloxy, butoxycarbonyloxy, etc.), mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., methylcarbamoyloxy, ethylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., dimethylcarbamoyloxy, diethylcarbamoyloxy, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy (e.g., phenylcarbamoyloxy, naphthylcarbamoyloxy, etc.), nicotinoyloxy, and so forth.

10       The above-mentioned "5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino" of the "5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted" includes, for example, morpholino, thiomorpholino, piperazin-1-yl, piperidino, pyrrolidin-1-yl, etc. The "substituents" of the "5- to  
15       7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted" include, for example, 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  aryl  
20       (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.) and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-  
25       benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.).

      The "3- to 8-membered carbocyclic ring" of the "3- to 8-membered carbocyclic ring which may be substituted" formed by  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  includes, for example,  $C_{3-8}$  cycloalkane such as cyclopropane, cyclobutane,  
30       cyclopentane, cyclohexane, etc.

      The "3- to 8-membered heterocyclic ring" of the "3- to 8-membered heterocyclic ring which may be substituted" formed by  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  includes, for example, aziridine, azetidine, morpholine, thiomorpholine,  
35       piperazine, piperidine, pyrrolidine, hexamethyleneimine, heptamethyleneimine, hexahydropyrimidine, etc.



The "substituents" of the "3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted" formed by  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  include, for example, 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.),  $C_{6-14}$  aryl (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.),  $C_{7-16}$  aryl (e.g., benzyl, phenethyl, diphenylmethyl, 1-naphthylmethyl, 2-naphthylmethyl, 2,2-diphenylethyl, etc.), amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, etc.), mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino (e.g., phenylamino, 1-naphthylamino, 2-naphthylamino, etc.), di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino, etc.), di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino (e.g., diphenylamino, etc.) and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group (e.g., 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, etc.).

The "lower alkyl" of the "lower alkyl which may be substituted" for  $R^3$  includes, for example,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The "substituents" of the "lower alkyl which may be substituted" for  $R^3$  and their number are the same as those mentioned above for the "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for  $R^1$  or  $R^2$ .

The "aromatic group" of the "aromatic group which may be substituted" for  $R^3$  includes, for example, an aromatic hydrocarbon group, an aromatic heterocyclic group, and so forth.

The "aromatic hydrocarbon group" includes, for example, a  $C_{6-14}$  monocyclic or fused polycyclic (e.g., bi- or tri-cyclic) aromatic hydrocarbon group, etc.



Concretely mentioned is C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl such as phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, biphenyl, 2-anthryl, etc.

The "aromatic heterocyclic group" includes, for example, 5- to 14-membered, preferably 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing one or more (e.g., 1 to 4) hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, etc. Concretely mentioned is a monovalent group formed by removing an optional hydrogen atom from an aromatic heterocyclic ring such as thiophene, benzothiophene, benzofuran, benzimidazole, benzoxazole, benzothiazole, benzisothiazole, naphtho[2,3-b]thiophene, furan, isoindolidine, xanthrene, phenoxathiin, pyrrole, imidazole, pyrazole, pyridine, pyrazine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, indole, isoindole, 1H-indazole, purine, 4H-quinolizine, isoquinoline, quinoline, phthalazine, naphthyridine, quinoxaline, quinazoline, cinnoline, carbazole,  $\beta$ -carboline, phenanthridine, acridine, phenazine, thiazole, isothiazole, phenothiazine, oxazole, isoxazole, furazan, phenoxazine, etc.; or a ring as formed through condensation of the above aromatic heterocyclic ring, preferably monocyclic ring, with one or more, preferably one or two aromatic rings (e.g., benzene ring, etc.), etc.

The preferred example of the "aromatic heterocyclic group" is a 5- or 6-membered aromatic heterocyclic group which may be fused with one benzene ring. Concretely mentioned is 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2-, 3-, 4-, 5- or 8-quinolyl, 1-, 3-, 4- or 5-isoquinolyl, 1-, 2- or 3-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, 2-benzo[b]thienyl, benzo[b]furanyl, 2- or 3-thienyl, etc. More preferred is 2- or 3-thienyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1- or 2-indolyl, 2-benzothiazolyl, etc.

The "substituents" of the "aromatic heterocyclic



group which may be substituted" include, for example, halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), nitro, cyano, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, 5 optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, 10 propylamino, isopropylamino, butylamino, etc.), di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino, dipropylamino, dibutylamino, ethylmethylamino, etc.), 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, sulfo, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl 15 (e.g., phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, etc.), C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy (e.g., phenyloxy, naphthyloxy, etc.), and so forth.

The "aromatic group" may have 1 to 3 substituents as mentioned above at possible positions of the 20 aromatic group and, when the number of substituents is two or more, those substituents may be the same as or different from one another.

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl", 25 "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy", "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio", "5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted", "acyl", "acylamino" and "acyloxy" include, 30 for example, those described in detail in the foregoing referring to the "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R<sup>1</sup> or R<sup>2</sup>, respectively.

35 Preferred example of the "aromatic group which may be substituted" for R<sup>3</sup> is a phenyl, 2-, 3- or 4-pyridyl, 2- or 3-quinolyl or 1-isoquinolyl group, each of which



may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, nitro, cyano, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, optionally  
 5 halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 10 substituted, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, sulfo,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy.

The "aromatic group which may be substituted" for  $R^4$  includes, for example, 1 to 3, preferably 1 or 2 of the "aromatic group which may be substituted" for  $R^3$   
 15 above mentioned.

The "aliphatic hydrocarbon group" of the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted" for  $R^4$  includes, for  
 20 example, alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, cycloalkyl, and so forth. Among others, preferred are  $C_{1-10}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-10}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-10}$  alkynyl and  $C_{3-10}$  cycloalkyl.

The "alkyl" is preferably, for example,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.  
 25

The "alkenyl" is preferably, for example,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl such as vinyl, allyl, isopropenyl, butenyl, isobutenyl, sec-butenyl, etc.

The "alkynyl" is preferably, for example,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl such as ethynyl, propargyl, butynyl, 1-hexynyl, etc.  
 30

The "cycloalkyl" is preferably, for example,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, etc.

35 Among others, preferred is  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl.

The "aromatic group which may be substituted" which the above "aliphatic hydrocarbon group" have,



includes, for example, 1 to 3 of the "aromatic group which may be substituted" for  $R^3$ .

Preferred example of the above "aromatic group which may be substituted" is a phenyl, 2-, 3- or 4-  
 5 pyridyl, 2- or 3-quinolyl or 1-isoquinolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-3}$  alkylendioxy, nitro, cyano, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  
 10 optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 15 substituted, acyl, acylamino, acyloxy, sulfo,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy.

The "substituents" which the above "aliphatic hydrocarbon group" may further have, and their number are the same as those mentioned above for the  
 20 "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for  $R^1$  or  $R^2$ .

Among them, preferred are acyl such as carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl, etc.

25 The "acyl" for  $R^4$  includes, for example, an acyl of the formula:  $-(C=O)-R^5$ ,  $-(C=O)-OR^5$ ,  $-(C=O)-NR^5R^6$ ,  $-(C=S)-NHR^5$ ,  $-SO_2-R^{5a}$  or  $-SO-R^{5a}$  wherein  $R^5$  is a hydrogen atom, an aromatic group which may be substituted or an aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted;  
 30  $R^{5a}$  is an aromatic group which may be substituted or an aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted; and  $R^6$  is a hydrogen atom or  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl.

The "aromatic group which may be substituted" for  $R^5$  or  $R^{5a}$  includes, for example, the "aromatic group  
 35 which may be substituted" for  $R^3$  above.

The "aliphatic hydrocarbon group" of the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted"



for R<sup>5</sup> or R<sup>5a</sup> includes, for example, the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group" of the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted" for R<sup>4</sup> above.

The "substituents" of the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R<sup>5</sup> or R<sup>5a</sup> include, for example, (1) the "aromatic group which may be substituted" of the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted" for R<sup>4</sup> above, (2) halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), (3) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), (4) nitro, (5) cyano, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino (e.g., methylamino, ethylamino, etc.), (15) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino (e.g., dimethylamino, diethylamino, etc.), (16) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted, (17) acyl, (18) acylamino, (19) acyloxy, (20) sulfo, and so forth.

The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy", "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio", "5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted", "acyl", "acylamino" and "acyloxy" include, for example, those described in detail in the foregoing referring to the "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R<sup>1</sup> or R<sup>2</sup>, respectively.



The "aliphatic hydrocarbon group" may have 1 to 5, preferably 1 to 3 substituents as mentioned above at possible positions of the aliphatic hydrocarbon group and, when the number of substituents is two or more,  
 5 those substituents may be the same as or different from one another.

Preferably,  $R^5$  and  $R^{5a}$  each is an aromatic group which may be substituted.

The " $C_{1-6}$  alkyl" for  $R^6$  includes, for example,  
 10 methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, isobutyl, sec-butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The "sulfur atom which may be oxidized" for X or Y includes S, SO and  $SO_2$ .

The "substituents" which ring A may have apart  
 15 from the group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$ , include, for example, the "substituents" of the "aromatic group which may be substituted" for  $R^3$  above. Ring A may have 1 to 3 substituents as mentioned above at possible positions of the ring and, when the number of  
 20 substituents is two or more, those substituents may be the same as or different from one another.

Preferably, the "substituents" which ring A may have apart from the group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$ , include, for example, halogen atoms,  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, nitro, cyano, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  
 25 optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, hydroxy, acyl,  
 30 acyloxy, sulfo,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy, and so forth.

The "aromatic group which may be substituted" and the "acyl" for  $R^{4a}$  include, for example, the "aromatic group which may be substituted" and the "acyl" for  $R^4$ , respectively.

35 The "aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for  $R^{4a}$  includes, for example, the "aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted"



for R<sup>5</sup> or R<sup>5a</sup>.

The "sulfur atom which may be oxidized" for Xa or Ya is same as the "sulfur atom which may be oxidized" for X above.

5       The "substituents" of the "imino which may be substituted" for Ya includes, for example, a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, an acyl, and so forth.

10       The above "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" includes, for example, the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R<sup>1</sup> or R<sup>2</sup>.

15       The above "acyl" includes, for example, that described in detail in the foregoing referring to the "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for R<sup>1</sup> or R<sup>2</sup>.

20       The preferred examples of the "imino which may be substituted" for Ya includes imino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylimino (e.g., methylimino, ethylimino, etc.), C<sub>6-14</sub> arylimino (e.g., phenylimino, 1-naphthylimino, 2-naphthylimino, etc.), C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkylimino (e.g., benzylimino, etc.), etc.

25       The "substituents" which ring Aa may have apart from the group of the formula: -Xa-R<sup>4a</sup>, include any substituent apart from an amino which may be substituted, for example, halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy (e.g., methylenedioxy, ethylenedioxy, etc.), nitro, cyano, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, 30 optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, hydroxy, acyl, acyloxy, sulfo, and so forth.

35       The above-mentioned "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl", "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy", "optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio",



"acyl" and "acyloxy" include, for example, those described in detail in the foregoing referring to the "substituents" of the "hydrocarbon group which may be substituted" for  $R^1$  or  $R^2$ , respectively.

5 Ring Aa may have 1 to 3 substituents as mentioned above at possible positions of the ring and, when the number of substituents is two or more, those substituents may be the same as or different from one another.

10 In the above formulae, preferably,  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted.

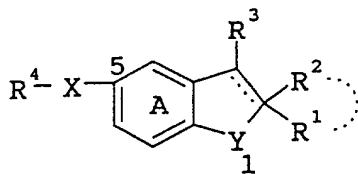
15 Preferably,  $R^3$  is an aromatic group which may be substituted.

20 Preferably,  $R^4$  and  $R^{4a}$  each is (1) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted or (2) an acyl.

Preferably, X and Xa each is an oxygen atom.

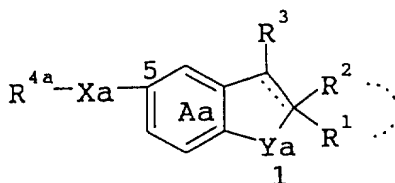
Preferably, Y and Ya each is an oxygen atom.

25 The group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$  is preferably substituted on the 5-position of the basic skeleton as follows.



30 The group of the formula:  $-Xa-R^{4a}$  is preferably substituted on the 5-position of the basic skeleton as follows.





In compound (I), preferred is a compound wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (4) hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (8) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (9) di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (10) carboxy, (11)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, (12)  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl, (13)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl, (14)  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl and (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group;

$R^3$  is a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (5) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and (6) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group;

$R^4$  is (1)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted by a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl,



4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (8) carboxy and (9) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, which  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl may be further substituted by carboxy or  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl, or

(ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and carboxy;

X is an oxygen atom;

Y is an oxygen atom; and

ring A is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino.

More preferred is a compound wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, carboxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, or

$R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a piperidine which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$



alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl;

R<sup>3</sup> is a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino;

R<sup>4</sup> is (i) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl substituted by a phenyl or pyridyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and carboxy, or

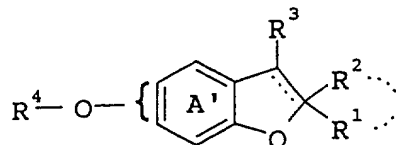
(ii) an acyl of the formula: -(C=O)-R<sup>5'</sup> wherein R<sup>5'</sup> is a phenyl or phenyl-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and carboxy;

X is an oxygen atom;

Y is an oxygen atom; and

ring A is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino.

Furthermore the compound of the following formula is also preferred.



wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted by 6-membered saturated cyclic amino substituted by a phenyl, or

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a piperidine substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or a C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl;



R<sup>3</sup> is (i) a hydrogen atom, or  
 (ii) a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3  
 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1)  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (2) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and (3) 6-membered  
 5 saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by a  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl.

R<sup>4</sup> is (i) a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3  
 substituents selected from the group consisting of  
 nitro and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, (ii) a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>2-</sub>  
 10 <sub>6</sub> alkenyl group substituted by 1 to 3 of phenyl,  
 quinolyl or pyridyl, each of which may be substituted  
 by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group  
 consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-  
 carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl,  
 15 which C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl group may be further  
 substituted by a phenyl, carboxy or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl,  
 or

(iii) an acyl of the formula:  $-(C=O)-R^{5'}$   
 wherein R<sup>5'</sup> is phenyl substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy; and  
 20 ring A' is a benzene ring which may be further  
 substituted by 1 to 3 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl.

In compound (Ia), preferred is a compound wherein  
 R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each is a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted by  
 25 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting  
 of (1) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, (2) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (3) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (4)  
 hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (7) mono-  
 C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (8) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (9) di-C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 arylamino, (10) carboxy, (11) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, (12)  
 30 C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, (13) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, (14) C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 arylsulfinyl and (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic  
 amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, or  
 35 R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon  
 atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring



which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group;

- 5  $R^3$  is a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group
- 10 consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (5) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and (6) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to
- 15 10-membered aromatic group;
- $R^{4a}$  is (i)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted by a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of
- 20 which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (8) carboxy and (9) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino
- 25 which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, which  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl may be further substituted by carboxy or  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl, or
- 30 (ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$
- 35 alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and carboxy;
- $X_a$  is an oxygen atom;



Ya is an oxygen atom; and  
 ring Aa is a benzene ring which may be further  
 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally  
 5 halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkoxy.

More preferred is a compound wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each  
 is a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3  
 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 10 aryl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono-  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino,  
 di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl,  
 or

15 R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon  
 atom, a piperidine which may be substituted by 1 to 3  
 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl;

R<sup>3</sup> is a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3  
 20 substituents selected from the group consisting of  
 halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylamino and di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino;

R<sup>4a</sup> is (i) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl substituted by a phenyl or pyridyl,  
 each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 25 selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and carboxy, or

(ii) an acyl of the formula: -(C=O)-R<sup>5'</sup> wherein R<sup>5'</sup> is  
 a phenyl or phenyl-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, each of which may be  
 30 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylamino and carboxy;

Xa is an oxygen atom;

35 Ya is an oxygen atom; and

ring Aa is a benzene ring which may be further



substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl and optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy.

5

As compound (I) or (Ia), concretely mentioned are  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-  
 pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran,  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran-5-  
 10 yl 4-methoxybenzoate,  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,4,6,7-  
 tetramethylbenzofuran,  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-1',4,6,7-  
 tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine],  
 15 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(3-pyridylmethyl)-2,2,4,6,7-  
 pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran,  
 and salts thereof.

More Preferred examples are  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-  
 20 pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran,  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran-5-  
 yl 4-methoxybenzoate,  
 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,4,6,7-  
 tetramethylbenzofuran,  
 25 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-1',4,6,7-  
 tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine],  
 and salts thereof.

Salts of compound (I) or compound (Ia) include,  
 30 for example, metal salts, ammonium salts, salts with  
 organic bases, salts with inorganic acids, salts with  
 organic acids, salts with basic or acidic amino acids,  
 etc. Preferred examples of metal salts include alkali  
 metal salts such as sodium salts, potassium salts;  
 35 alkaline earth metal salts such as calcium salts,  
 magnesium salts, barium salts; aluminium salts, etc.  
 Preferred examples of salts with organic bases include



salts with trimethylamine, triethylamine, pyridine, picoline, ethanolamine, diethanolamine, triethanolamine, dicyclohexylamine, N,N-dibenzylethylenediamine, etc.

Preferred examples of salts with inorganic acids  
5 include hydrochlorides, hydrobromides, nitrates, sulfates, phosphates, etc. Preferred examples of salts with organic acids include formates, acetates, trifluoroacetates, fumarates, oxalates, tartrates, maleates, citrates, succinates, malates,  
10 methanesulfonates, benzenesulfonates, p-toluenesulfonates, etc. Preferred examples of salts with basic amino acids include salts with arginine, lysine, ornithine, etc. Preferred examples of salts with acidic amino acids include aspartates, glutamates,  
15 etc.

Among others, more preferred are pharmaceutically acceptable salts. For example, for compound (I) or (Ia) having an acidic functional group in the molecule, mentioned are their inorganic salts, such as alkali  
20 metal salts (e.g., sodium salts, potassium salts, etc.), and alkaline earth metal salts (e.g., calcium salts, magnesium salts, barium salts, etc.), ammonium salts, etc.; and for compound (I) or (Ia) having a basic functional group in the molecule, mentioned are their  
25 inorganic salts such as hydrochlorides, sulfates, phosphates, hydrobromides etc., and organic salts such as acetates, maleates, fumarates, succinates, methanesulfonates, p-toluenesulfonates, citrates, tartrates, etc.

30

Process for producing compound (I) and compound (Ia) is mentioned below.

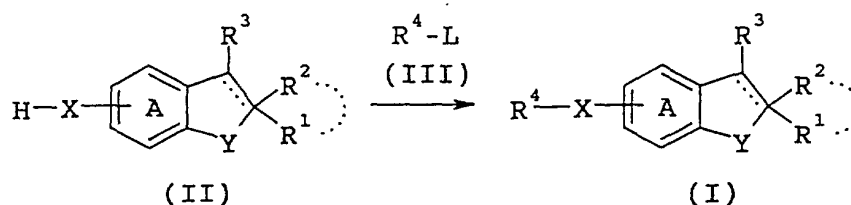
Compound (I) of the present invention can be produced in any *per se* known manner, for example,  
35 according to the methods disclosed in EP-A-273647, JP-A-1-272578, EP-A-483772, JP-A-5-140142, EP-A-345593, JP-A-2-76869, EP-A-345592 and JP-A-2-76870, or



analogous methods thereto, as well as according to the methods of the following process. Compound (Ia) can be produced in the same manner as in the production of compound (I), or in any other *per se* known manner, for example, according to the methods disclosed in WO 94/14434, JP-A-8-504826 and WO 84/02131, or analogous methods thereto.

Each symbol in the compounds in the following process is same as defined above. Compounds (II) and (III) described in the following process include their salts. For their salts, for example, referred to are the same as the salts of compound (I).

#### Process 1



Compound (I) is produced by reacting compound (II) with a compound of the formula:  $\text{R}^4\text{-L}$  wherein L represents a leaving group and  $\text{R}^4$  is as defined above [compound (III)].

The "leaving group" for L includes, for example, hydroxy, halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), optionally halogenated  $\text{C}_{1-5}$  alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g., methanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, trichloromethanesulfonyloxy, etc.),  $\text{C}_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyloxy which may be substituted. The " $\text{C}_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyloxy which may be substituted" includes, for example,  $\text{C}_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyloxy (e.g. phenylsulfonyloxy, naphthylsulfonyloxy, etc.) which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $\text{C}_{1-6}$  alkoxy and nitro. Concretely mentioned is benzenesulfonyloxy, m-



nitrobenzenesulfonyloxy and p-toluenesulfonyloxy, and so forth.

(1) Hereinunder mentioned is the case where R<sup>4</sup> is "an aromatic group which may be substituted" or "an aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted".

Compound (II) is reacted with compound (III) optionally in the presence of a base.

The amount of compound (III) to be reacted is from 1.0 to 5.0 mol or so, preferably from 1.0 to 2.0 mol or so, relative to one mol of compound (II).

The "base" includes, for example, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydrogencarbonate, etc.; aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine, etc.; tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, etc.; alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride, etc.; metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide, etc.; metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, etc. The amount of the base to be used is from 1.0 to 5.0 mol or so, preferably from 1.0 to 2.0 mol or so, relative to one mol of compound (II).

In this reaction, advantageously used is a solvent inert to the reaction. There is no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.; ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, cyclohexane, hexane, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide,



N,N-dimethylacetamide, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, propionitrile, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc.; and mixtures of those solvents.

The reaction time is generally from 30 minutes to 48 hours, preferably from 1 hour to 24 hours. The reaction temperature is generally from -20 to 200°C, preferably from 0 to 150°C.

In place of the reaction mentioned above, also employable herein is Mitsunobu reaction (see Synthesis, pp. 1-27, 1981).

In this reaction, compound (II) is reacted with compound (III) wherein L is OH in the presence of an azodicarboxylate compound (e.g., diethylazodicarboxylate, etc.) and a phosphine compound (e.g., triphenylphosphine, tributylphosphine, etc.).

The amount of compound (III) wherein L is OH to be reacted is from 1.0 to 5.0 mol or so, preferably from 1.0 to 2.0 mol or so, relative to one mol of compound (II).

The amount of the "azodicarboxylate compound" and that of the "phosphine compound" to be used are from 1.0 to 5.0 mol or so, preferably from 1.0 to 2.0 mol or so, relative to one mol of compound (II), respectively.

In this reaction, advantageously used is a solvent inert to the reaction. There is no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, cyclohexane, hexane, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon



tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, propionitrile, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc.; and mixtures of those solvents.

5       The reaction time is generally from 5 minutes to 48 hours, preferably from 30 minutes to 24 hours. The reaction temperature is generally from -20 to 200°C, preferably from 0 to 100°C.

10       (2) The case where R<sup>4</sup> is "an acyl" is mentioned below.

Compound (II) is reacted with compound (III) optionally in the presence of a base or acid.

15       The amount of compound (III) to be reacted is from 1.0 to 5.0 mol or so, preferably from 1.0 to 2.0 mol or so, relative to one mol of compound (II).

The "base" includes, for example, aromatic amines such as triethylamine, pyridine, etc.

20       The "acid" includes, for example, methanesulfonic acid, p-toluenesulfonic acid, camphor-sulfonic acid, etc.

The amount of the "base" to be used is from 1.0 to 10 equivalents or so, preferably from 0.8 to 2 equivalents or so, relative to compound (II).

25       The amount of the "acid" to be used is from 0.1 to 10 equivalents or so, preferably from 0.8 to 3 equivalents or so, relative to compound (II).

30       This reaction is advantageously effected in the absence of a solvent or in the presence of a solvent inert to the reaction. There is no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, etc.;  
35       hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, cyclohexane, hexane, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons



such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, propionitrile, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide, etc.; nitrogen-containing aromatic hydrocarbons such as pyridine, lutidine, quinoline, etc.; and mixtures of those solvents.

The reaction temperature is generally from -20 to 150°C or so, preferably from 0 to 100°C. The reaction time is generally from 5 minutes to 24 hours, preferably from 10 minutes to 5 hours.

The product (I) as produced in the manner mentioned above may be applied to the next reaction while it is still crude in the reaction mixture, or may be isolated from the reaction mixture in any ordinary manner. This can be easily purified through separation means such as recrystallization, distillation, chromatography and the like.

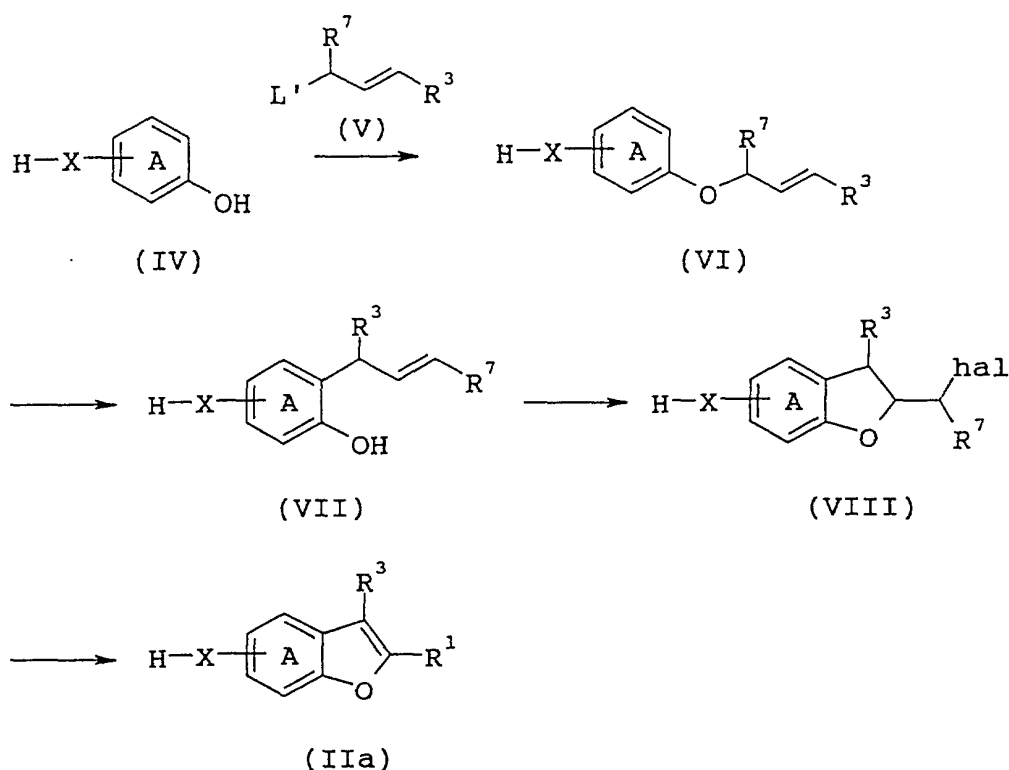
Compound (II) can be produced in any *per se* known manner, for example, by the methods disclosed in EP-A-273647, JP-A-1-272578, EP-A-483772, JP-A-5-140142, EP-A-345593, JP-A-2-76869, EP-A-345592, JP-A-2-76870 and JP-A-57-122080, or analogous methods thereto.

Compound (III) can be purchased from a commercial market or produced in any *per se* known manner.

In the case that Compound (II) is a benzofuran [compound (IIa)], it can be also obtained according to the methods of the following process.



## Process 2



In above formulae,  $L'$  represents a leaving group,  $R^7$  represents a hydrogen atom or a group formed by removing a methylene from  $R^1$  and  $hal$  represents halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc).

The "leaving group" for  $L'$  includes, for example, hydroxy, halogen atoms (e.g. fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyloxy (e.g. methanesulfonyloxy, ethanesulfonyloxy, etc.),  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyloxy which may be substituted, etc. The " $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyloxy which may be substituted" includes, for example,  $C_{6-10}$  arylsulfonyloxy (e.g. phenylsulfonyloxy, naphthylsulfonyloxy, etc.) which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy and nitro. Concretely mentioned is benzenesulfonyloxy, m-nitrobenzenesulfonyloxy, p-toluenesulfonyloxy, and so forth.



Compound (IV) can be purchased from a commercial market or produced in any *per se* known manner.

Compound (VI) can be produced by reacting a phenolate anion, which is produced by treating compound (IV) with a base, and a compound of the formula:  
 5  $R^7\text{-CHL}'\text{-CH=CH-R}^3$  [compound (V)].

The "base" includes, for example, inorganic bases such as alkali metal hydroxides such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.; alkali metal  
 10 alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, etc.; alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride, etc.; metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide, etc.; and basic salts  
 15 such as potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium acetate, etc. The amount of the base is generally about from 0.5 to 5 mol, preferably about 1 to 3 mol, per mol of compound (IV).

This reaction is advantageously effected in the presence of a solvent inert to the reaction. There is  
 20 no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as cyclohexane, hexane, benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.;  
 25 ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.;  
 30 sulfoxides such as dimethyl sulfoxide etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; ketones such as acetone, methyl ethyl ketone, etc.; water; and mixtures of these solvents.

35 The reaction time is generally from 10 minutes to 8 hours, preferably from 30 minutes to 3 hours. The reaction temperature is generally from 0 to 120°C,



preferably from 25 to 100°C.

The reaction product can be directly used, either as the reaction mixture as such or in a partially purified form, in the next reaction. If desired, however, the product compound can be isolated from the reaction mixture in the routine manner and expediently purified by the conventional purification procedure (e.g. recrystallization, distillation, chromatography, etc.).

Compound (VII) can be produced by subjecting compound (VI) to Claisen rearrangement.

This reaction is advantageously effected in the absence of a solvent or in the presence of a solvent inert to the reaction. There is no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as cyclohexane, hexane, benzene, toluene, xylene, mesitylene etc.; ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethyl sulfoxide etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; and mixtures of these solvents.

If desired, this reaction can be conducted with acid catalyst.

The "acid catalyst" includes, for example, Lewis acid such as aluminium chloride, boron trifluoride etc. The amount of the acid catalyst is generally from about 0.1 to 20 mol, preferably from about 0.1 to 5 mol, per mol of compound (VI).

The reaction time is generally from 10 minutes to 8 hours, preferably from 30 minutes to 3 hours. The



reaction temperature is from generally -70 to 300°C, preferably from 150 to 250°C.

Thus obtained compound can be submitted to the next reaction either as the reaction mixture or after  
5 partial purification, but can be easily isolated by *per se* known method and purified by the routine purification procedures such as recrystallization, distillation, chromatography, etc.

10 Compound (VIII) can also be produced by treating compound (VII) with a halogenation reagent.

The "halogenation reagent" includes, for example, halogens such as bromine, chlorine, iodine, etc.; imides such as N-bromosuccinimide, etc.; halogen  
15 adducts such as benzyltrimethylammonium dichloroiodate, benzyltrimethylammonium tribromide, etc.

The amount of the halogenation reagent is from about 1.0 to 5.0 mol, preferably from about 1.0 to 2.0 mol, per mol of compound (VII).

20 This reaction is advantageously effected in the presence of a solvent inert to the reaction. There is no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are ethers such as diethyl  
25 ether, tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, etc.; alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene, cyclohexane, hexane, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, etc.;  
30 halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; nitriles such as acetonitrile, propionitrile, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethyl sulfoxide etc.; organic acids such as acetic acid, propionic acid,  
35 etc.; nitroalkanes such as nitromethane, etc.; aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine, quinoline, etc.; and mixtures of these solvents.



This reaction can be conducted with a base or a radical initiator, or under light exposure, where necessary.

5       The "base" includes, for example, basic salts such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, cesium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate, sodium acetate, potassium acetate, etc; aromatic amines such as pyridine, lutidine, etc.; tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, tributylamine, cyclohexyldimethylamine, 4-dimethylaminopyridine, N,N-dimethylaniline, N-methylpiperidine, N-methylpyrrolidine, N-methylmorpholine, etc. The amount of the bases is from about 0.8 to 10 mol, per mol of compound (VII).

15       The "radical initiator" includes, for example, benzoyl peroxide, azobisisobutyronitrile, etc. The amount of the radical initiator is from about 0.01 to 1 mol, per mol of compound (VII).

20       In the case of the light exposure, halogen lamp can be used.

The reaction temperature is about from -50 to 150°C, preferably from 0 to 100°C. The reaction time is generally from 5 minutes to 24 hours, preferably from 10 minutes to 12 hours.

25       Thus obtained compound can be submitted to the next reaction either as the reaction mixture or after partial purification, but can be easily isolated by per se known method and purified by the routine purification procedures such as recrystallization, distillation, chromatography, etc.

Compound (IIa) can be produced by treating compound (VIII) with a base.

35       The "base" includes, for example, inorganic bases such as alkali metal hydroxides e.g., sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, etc.; organic bases such as triethylamine, 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]-7-undecene,



pyridine, etc.; alkali metal alkoxides such as sodium methoxide, sodium ethoxide, potassium tert-butoxide, etc.; alkali metal hydrides such as sodium hydride, potassium hydride, etc.; metal amides such as sodium amide, lithium diisopropylamide, lithium hexamethyldisilazide, etc.; basic salts such as potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium acetate, etc.

The amount of the base is generally from about 0.5 to 10 mol, preferably about from 1 to 5 mol, per mole of compound (VIII).

This reaction is advantageously effected in the presence of a solvent inert to the reaction. There is no particular limitation on the kind of solvent that can be used unless the reaction is interfered with. For example, preferably used are alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, etc.; hydrocarbons such as cyclohexane, hexane, benzene, toluene, xylene, etc.; ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane, 1,2-dimethoxyethane, diethyl ether, diisopropyl ether, etc.; amides such as N,N-dimethylformamide, N,N-dimethylacetamide, hexamethylphosphoric triamide, etc.; sulfoxides such as dimethyl sulfoxide etc.; halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, 1,2-dichloroethane, etc.; ketones such as acetone, methyl ethyl ketone, etc.; water; and mixtures of these solvents.

The reaction time is generally from 10 minutes to 24 hours, preferably from 30 minutes to 12 hours. The reaction temperature is generally from 0 to 120°C, preferably from 25 to 100°C.

Thus obtained compound can be submitted to the next reaction either as the reaction mixture or after partial purification, but can be easily isolated by *per se* known method and purified by the routine purification procedures such as recrystallization, distillation, chromatography, etc.



In the above-mentioned reactions where the starting compounds are substituted by any of amino, carboxy or hydroxy, those groups may be protected by ordinary protective groups which are generally used in peptide chemistry. The protective groups may be removed after the reaction to give the intended products.

The amino-protecting group includes, for example, formyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.) which may be substituted, phenylcarbonyl which may be substituted,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl (e.g., methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, etc.) which may be substituted, phenyloxycarbonyl which may be substituted,  $C_{7-10}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.) which may be substituted, trityl which may be substituted, phthaloyl which may be substituted, etc. These substituents include, for example, halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.),  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, valeryl, etc.), nitro, etc. The number of those substituents is 1 to 3.

The carboxy-protecting group includes, for example,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.) which may be substituted, phenyl which may be substituted, trityl which may be substituted, silyl which may be substituted, etc. These substituents includes, for example, halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), formyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, butylcarbonyl, etc.), nitro,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, tert-butyl, etc.),  $C_{6-10}$  aryl (e.g., phenyl, naphthyl, etc.), etc. The number of those substituents is 1 to 3.

The hydroxy-protecting group includes, for example,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, etc.) which may be substituted, phenyl which may be substituted,  $C_{7-11}$  aralkyl (e.g., benzyl, etc.) which may be substituted, formyl which



may be substituted, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl (e.g., acetyl, propionyl, etc.) which may be substituted, phenyloxycarbonyl which may be substituted, C<sub>7-11</sub> aralkyl-oxy carbonyl (e.g., benzyloxycarbonyl, etc.) which may be substituted, tetrahydropyranyl which may be substituted, tetrahydrofuranyl which may be substituted, silyl which may be substituted, etc. Those substituents include, for example, halogen atoms (e.g., fluoro, chloro, bromo, iodo, etc.), C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl (e.g., methyl, ethyl, tert-butyl, etc.), C<sub>7-11</sub> aralkyl (e.g., benzyl, etc.), C<sub>6-10</sub> aryl (e.g., phenyl, naphthyl, etc.), nitro, etc. The number of those substituents is 1 to 4.

Those protective groups may be removed by any *per se* known methods or analogous methods thereto, such as methods using acids, bases, ultraviolet rays, hydrazine, phenylhydrazine, sodium N-methyldithiocarbamate, tetrabutylammonium fluoride, palladium acetate, etc.; and reduction, etc.

The starting compounds for compound (I) include their salts, which are not specifically defined provided that the reaction with those salts gives the intended products. The above salts include, for example, the salts of compound (I) above.

For configurational isomers (E- and Z-forms) of compound (I), they may be isolated and purified through any ordinary separation means of, for example, extraction, recrystallization, distillation, chromatography and the like, to give pure products in any time when the isomers are formed. By the methods described in "Shin Jikken Kagaku Kouza (New Edition of Lectures of Experimental Chemistry)" 14, edited by the Chemical Society of Japan, pp. 251-253, and in Fourth Edition of "Shin Jikken Kagaku Kouza (Lectures of Experimental Chemistry)" 19, edited by the Chemical Society of Japan, pp. 273-274, or analogous methods thereto, the products of compound (I) being produced



are specifically isomerized at the position of the double bond by heating, or with acid catalysts, transition metal catalysts or radical species catalysts, or through exposure to light, or with strong base catalysts or the like, to thereby obtain the intended pure isomers.

Compound (I) includes stereoisomers, depending on the type of the substituents therein, and both single isomers and mixtures of different isomers are within the scope of the present invention.

Compounds (I) and (Ia) may be in any form of their hydrates and non-hydrates.

In any case, products formed in the reaction mixtures may be subjected to deprotection, acylation, alkylation, hydrogenation, oxidation, reduction, chain extension, substituents-exchange reaction and combined reactions thereof, to obtain compound (I).

Where the products are formed in their free form in the reaction, they may be converted into their salts in any ordinary manner. Where they are formed in the form of their salts, they may be converted into free compounds or other salts in any ordinary manner. The thus-obtained compound (I) may be isolated and purified from the reaction mixtures through any ordinary means of, for example, trans-solvation, concentration, solvent extraction, fractionation, crystallization, recrystallization, chromatography and the like.

Where compound (I) exists in the reaction mixtures in the form of its configurational isomers, diastereomers, conformers or the like, they may be optionally isolated into single isomer through the separation and isolation means mentioned above. Where compound (I) is in the form of its racemates, they may be resolved into d- and l-forms through any ordinary optical resolution.



As compound (I) of the present invention and compound (Ia) have an suppressive effect on neurodegeneration, an activity of suppressing nerve cell death to be caused by  $\beta$ -amyloid, and an activity of neurotrophic factors, while having low toxicity and few side effects, they are useful as medicines.

Compound (I) of the present invention and compound (Ia) act on mammals (e.g., mouse, rat, hamster, rabbit, feline, canine, bovine, sheep, monkey, human, etc.) as neurodegeneration inhibitors and neurotrophic factor-like substances, or as  $\beta$ -amyloid toxicity inhibitors, and suppress the nerve cell death in those mammals. In addition, as having an activity of activating cholinergic neurons (e.g., elevation of choline acetyltransferase activity, etc.), compounds (I) and (Ia) increase the acetylcholine content of subjects to which they are administered while activating the function of the central nervous systems of the subjects. Accordingly, compounds (I) and (Ia) are effective for neurodegenerative diseases (e.g., Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), Huntington's chorea, etc.), peripheral nervous system disorders (e.g., diabetic neuropathy, etc.) and the like, and are used as medicines for preventing and/or treating those diseases and disorders.

As their toxicity is low, compound (I) of the present invention and compound (Ia) are, either directly as they are or after having been formulated into pharmaceutical compositions along with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers in any *per se* known manner, for example, into tablets (including sugar-coated tablets, film-coated tablets), powders, granules, capsules (including soft capsules), liquid preparations, injections, suppositories, sustained release preparations, cataplasms, chewing gums, etc., safely administered orally or parenterally (e.g.,



locally, rectally, intravenously, etc.). In the pharmaceutical composition of the present invention, the amount of compound (I) or (Ia) is from 0.01 to 100 % by weight or so of the total weight of the composition. The dose of the composition varies, depending on the subject to which the composition is administered, the administration route employed, the disorder of the subject, etc. For example, for the peroral composition for treating Alzheimer's disease, its dose to adults may be from 0.1 to 20 mg/kg of body weight or so, preferably from 0.2 to 10 mg/kg of body weight or so, more preferably from 0.5 to 10 mg/kg of body weight or so, in terms of the active ingredient of compound (I) or (Ia), and this may be administered once or several times a day. Compounds (I) and (Ia) may be combined with any other active ingredients, for example, cholinesterase inhibitor (e.g., Aricept (donepezil), etc.), brain function activator (e.g., idebenone, vinpocetine, etc.), medicine for Parkinson's disease (e.g., L-dopa, etc.), neurotrophic factors, and so forth. For example, compound (I) or (Ia) is mixed with any of those other active ingredients in any known manner, and formulated into one pharmaceutical composition (for example, in the form of tablets, powders, granules, capsules including soft capsules, liquid preparations, injections, suppositories, sustained-release preparations, etc.); or they may be formulated into separate compositions and administered to the same subject simultaneously or at time intervals.

Any ordinary organic and inorganic carrier substances that are generally used in formulating medicines are usable as the carriers for formulating the pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention. For example, employable are ordinary excipients, lubricants, binders, disintegrators, etc. for formulating solid preparations; and solvents, solubilizers, suspending agents, isotonicizing agents,



buffers, soothing agents, etc. for formulating liquid preparations. If desired, further employable are other additives such as preservatives, antioxidants, colorants, sweeteners, adsorbents, wetting agents, etc.

5       The excipients include, for example, lactose, white sugar, D-mannitol, starch, corn starch, crystalline cellulose, light silicic anhydride, etc.

      The lubricants include, for example, magnesium stearate, calcium stearate, talc, colloidal silica, etc.

10       The binders include, for example, crystalline cellulose, white sugar, D-mannitol, dextrin, hydroxypropyl cellulose, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, starch, sucrose, gelatin, methyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose sodium, etc.

15       The disintegrators include, for example, starch, carboxymethyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose calcium, croscarmellose sodium, carboxymethyl starch sodium, L-hydroxypropyl cellulose, etc.

20       The solvents include, for example, water for injections, alcohol, propylene glycol, macrogol, sesame oil, corn oil, olive oil, etc.

      The solubilizers include, for example, polyethylene glycol, propylene glycol, D-mannitol, benzyl benzoate, ethanol, trisaminomethane, cholesterol, 25 triethanolamine, sodium carbonate, sodium citrate, etc.

      The suspending agents include, for example, surfactants such as stearyl triethanolamine, sodium lauryl sulfate, lauryl aminopropionic acid, lecithin, benzalkonium chloride, benzethonium chloride, glycerin 30 monostearate, etc.; hydrophilic polymers such as polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, carboxymethyl cellulose sodium, methyl cellulose, hydroxymethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, etc.

35       The isotonizing agents include, for example, glucose, D-sorbitol, sodium chloride, glycerin, D-mannitol, etc.



The buffers include, for example, liquid buffers of phosphates, acetates, carbonates, citrates, etc.

The soothing agents include, for example, benzyl alcohol, etc.

5       The preservatives include, for example, parahydroxybenzoates, chlorobutanol, benzyl alcohol, phenethyl alcohol, dehydroacetic acid, sorbic acid, etc.

The antioxidants include, for example, sulfites, ascorbic acid, etc.

10

#### BEST MODE FOR CARRYING OUT THE INVENTION

15       The invention will be described in more detail hereinunder, with reference to the following Reference Examples, Examples, Formulation Examples and Experimental Examples, which, however, are to concretely illustrate some embodiments of the invention and are not intended to restrict the scope of the invention. Various changes and modifications can be made within the range that does not deviate the scope of the invention.

20

"Room temperature" as referred to in the following Reference Examples and Examples is meant to indicate a temperature falling between 10°C and 35°C. Unless otherwise specifically indicated, "%" is by weight.

25

The meanings of the abbreviations used hereinunder are as follows:

s: singlet  
d: doublet  
t: triplet  
30   q: quartet  
septet : septet  
m: multiplet  
br: broad  
J: coupling constant  
35   Hz: Hertz  
CDCl<sub>3</sub>: deuterated chloroform



$d_6$ -DMSO: deuterated dimethylsulfoxide

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR: proton nuclear magnetic resonance spectrum

### Examples

#### 5 Reference Example 1

##### Methyl $\alpha$ -bromophenylacetate

Concentrated sulfuric acid (0.5 mL) was added to a solution of  $\alpha$ -bromophenylacetic acid (3.00 g, 13.9 mmol) in ethanol (30 mL) at room temperature, and the  
10 mixture was heated under reflux for 1 hour. The reaction mixture was cooled, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, then dried over magnesium sulfate,  
15 filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (2.50 g, yield 79 %). This was oily.

$^1\text{H}$ -NMR ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 3.78 (3H, s), 5.36 (1H, s), 7.29-7.42 (3H, m), 7.48-7.61 (2H, m).

20

#### Reference Example 2

##### 1-Bromo-4-(4-morpholinyl)benzene

Bromine (10.8 g, 67.4 mmol) was added to a solution of 4-(4-morpholinyl)benzene (10.0 g, 61.3  
25 mmol) in ethanol (100 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. Water (100 mL) was poured into the reaction mixture, which was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate and water, then dried over magnesium  
30 sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (10.7 g, yield 72 %).

35 m.p.: 118-120°C.



$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 2.98-3.22 (4H, m), 3.71-3.92 (4H, m), 6.72-6.83 (2H, m), 7.31-7.42 (2H, m).

#### Reference Example 3

##### 5 1-Bromo-4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)benzene

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 2.70 g, 67.8 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-phenylpiperazine (10.0 g, 61.6 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (80 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added iodomethane (8.74 g, 67.8 mmol), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water (80 mL), and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from hexane-isopropyl ether to obtain 1-methyl-4-phenylpiperazine (7.40 g). Bromine (7.00 g, 43.8 mmol) was added to a solution of this compound in ethanol (80 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 1 hour at room temperature. Water (80 mL) was poured into the reaction mixture, which was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate and water, then dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (8.1 g, yield 52 %).  
m.p.: 78-80°C.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 2.35 (3H, s), 2.52-2.63 (4H, m), 3.13-3.26 (4H, m), 6.78 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.33 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz).

35

#### Reference Example 4



## 2-Methyl-1-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]propan-1-one

n-Butyllithium (1.6 M, 25.8 mL, 41.3 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-bromo-4-(4-morpholinyl)benzene (10.0 g, 41.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) at - 78°C, and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added N-isobutyrylpropyleneimine (5.77 g, 45.4 mmol), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. Water (40 mL) was poured into the reaction mixture, which was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from hexane to obtain the title compound (6.50 g, yield 67 %).

m.p.: 75-77°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.19 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.22-3.33 (4H, m), 3.50 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.81-3.92 (4H, m), 6.81-6.92 (2H, m), 7.85-8.95 (2H, m).

## Reference Example 5

## 2-Methyl-1-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]propan-1-one

Using 1-bromo-4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)benzene the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 4.

Yield: 81 %.

m.p.: 74-76°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.19 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.35 (3H, s), 2.46-2.63 (4H, m), 3.32-3.41 (4H, m), 3.50 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 6.84-6.92 (2H, m), 7.85-7.95 (2H, m).

## Reference Example 6

1-(2,5-Dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)-2-methyl-1-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]propan-1-ol



n-Butyllithium (1.6 M, 18.1 mL, 29.0 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-bromo-2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylbenzene (7.52 g, 29.0 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (50 mL) at -78°C, and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 2-methyl-1-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]propan-1-one (6.15 g, 26.4 mmol), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. Water (40 mL) was poured into the reaction mixture, which was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethanol to obtain the title compound (8.40 g, yield 90 %).

m.p.: 191-193°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.87-1.10 (6H, m), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.18 (3H, s), 2.45 (3H, s), 2.80-3.18 (8H, m), 3.62 (3H, s), 3.75-3.90 (4H, m), 6.41 (1H, br s), 6.82 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.34 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz).

#### Reference Example 7

1-(2,5-Dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)-2-methyl-1-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]propan-1-ol

Using 2-methyl-1-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]propan-1-one, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 6. Yield: 43 %.

m.p.: 114-116°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.97 (6H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.18 (3H, s), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.45 (3H, s), 2.50-2.62 (4H, m), 2.76-3.00 (1H, m), 3.02 (3H, s), 3.10-3.28 (4H, m), 3.62 (3H, s), 6.40 (1H, br s), 6.84 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.33 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz).

#### Reference Example 8



3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2-dimethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol

n-Butyllithium (1.6 M, 20.8 mL, 33.2 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-bromo-2,5-dimethoxybenzene (7.2 g, 33.2 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) at -78°C, and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 1-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2-methylpropan-1-one (5.70 g, 30.0 mmol), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. Water (30 mL) was poured into the reaction mixture, which was then extracted three times with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. A mixture of the residue and 48 % hydrobromic acid (30 mL) was heated under reflux for 24 hours in an argon atmosphere. After cooled, water (30 mL) was added to the reaction mixture, which was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from isopropyl ether-hexane to obtain the title compound (2.1 g, yield 70 %). m.p.: 102-104°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.96 (3H, s), 1.25 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.57 (3H, s), 2.90 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.28 (1H, s), 4.67 (1H, s), 6.53-6.85 (3H, m), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.16 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz).

Reference Example 9

2,2,4,6,7-Pentamethyl-3-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol

A mixture of 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)-2-methyl-1-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]propan-1-ol (8.00 g, 19.3 mmol) and 48 % hydrobromic acid (100 mL) was heated under reflux



for 3 hours in an argon atmosphere. After cooled, an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate (30 mL) was added to the reaction mixture, which was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were

5 combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from isopropyl ether-hexane to obtain the title compound (6.40 g, yield 90 %).

10 m.p.: 91-93°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.00 (3H, s), 1.46 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.98-3.24 (4H, m), 3.71-3.99 (4H, m), 4.04 (1H, s), 4.18 (1H, s), 6.44-7.10 (4H, m).

15

#### Reference Example 10

2,2,4,6,7-Pentamethyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol

Using 1-(2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)-2-methyl-1-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]propan-1-ol the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 9.

20

Yield: 55 %.

m.p.: 159-161°C (from ethyl acetate-hexane).

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.00 (3H, s), 1.46 (3H, s), 1.81 (3H, s), 2.17 (6H, s), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.48-2.65 (4H, m), 3.08-3.22 (4H, m), 4.03 (1H, s), 6.58-7.20 (4H, m), 1H not confirmed.

#### 30 Reference Example 11

1-(4-Isopropylphenyl)propan-1-ol

Propionyl chloride (11.6 g, 125 mmol) was dropwise added to a suspension of aluminium chloride (16.7 g, 125 mmol) and cumene (18.0 g, 150 mmol) in carbon disulfide (30 mL) at -5°C, and the mixture was stirred

35 for 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction



mixture was poured into water with ice, and the organic layer was separated, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate and water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain 1-(4-isopropylphenyl)propan-1-one (24.7 g). Sodium borohydride (1.29 g, 34.2 mmol) was added to a solution of the thus-obtained compound (13.0 g, 68.4 mmol) in ethanol (80 mL) with cooling with ice, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. Water was added to the reaction mixture, which was then extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layer was washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (11.5 g, yield 79 %). This was oily.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 0.91 (3H, t,  $J = 7.4$  Hz), 1.25 (6H, d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.63-1.92 (2H, m), 1.94 (1H, br s), 2.90 (1H, septet,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 4.47-4.61 (1H, m), 7.16-7.29 (4H, m).

#### Reference Example 12

2-[1-(4-Isopropylphenyl)propyl]-3,5,6-trimethyl-1,4-benzoquinone

Boron trifluoride/ethyl ether complex (1.30 g, 9.33 mmol) was dropwise added to a suspension of 1-(4-isopropylphenyl)propan-1-ol (5.00 g, 28.0 mmol) and trimethylhydroquinone (4.30 g, 28.0 mmol) in 1,2-dichloroethane (100 mL) at 60°C in a nitrogen atmosphere, and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours at the same temperature. After cooled, the reaction mixture was washed with an aqueous solution of iron(III) chloride and water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 30/1) to obtain the title compound (5.40 g, yield 62 %).



m.p.: 61-63°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.91 (3H, t, J = 7.4 Hz), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.83-2.11 (11H, m), 2.85 (1H, septet, J = 6.8 Hz), 4.02-4.23 (1H, m), 7.02-4.24 (4H, m).

5

#### Reference Example 13

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran-5-ol

A solution of 2-[1-(4-isopropylphenyl)propyl]-  
10 3,5,6-trimethyl-1,4-benzoquinone (1.00 g, 0.324 mmol)  
in ethanol (1.00 liter) was stirred for 5 hours while  
cooling it with ice-water to keep the solution at room  
temperature and while exposing it to light from 400 W  
Bromcinelight Deluxe (manufactured by LPL Co.). The  
15 solvent was removed under reduced pressure, and the  
residue was subjected to silica gel column  
chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 20/1) to obtain  
the title compound (0.90 g, yield 90 %). This was oily.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.31 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.98 (3H, s),  
20 2.28 (3H, s), 2.30 (3H, s), 2.43 (3H, s), 2.97 (1H,  
septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.43 (1H, s), 7.26 (4H, s).

#### Reference Example 14

25 2,3,6-Trimethyl-4-[(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)oxy]phenyl  
acetate

To a solution of 4-hydroxy-2,3,6-trimethylphenyl  
acetate (10.0 g, 51.5 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide  
(100 mL) was added 1-chloro-3-phenyl-2-propene (7.86 g,  
51.5 mmol) and potassium carbonate (7.10 g, 51.5 mmol)  
30 and the mixture was stirred under an argon atmosphere  
at 60°C for 2 hours. This reaction mixture was poured  
into water and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The  
combined extract was washed with water, dried over  
magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced  
35 pressure. The residue was crystallized from methanol to  
obtain the title compound (13.0 g, yield 81%).



m.p.: 104-107°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 2.06 (3H, s), 2.13 (3H, s), 2.18 (3H, s), 2.34 (3H, s), 4.66 (2H, dd, J = 5.6, 1.2 Hz), 6.43 (1H, dt, J = 16.2, 5.6 Hz), 5.63 (1H, s), 6.74 (1H, d, J = 16.2 Hz), 7.24-7.46 (5H, m).

#### Reference Example 15

4-Hydroxy-2,3,6-trimethyl-5-(1-phenyl-2-propenyl)phenyl acetate

10 A solution of 2,3,6-trimethyl-4-[(3-phenyl-2-propenyl)oxy]phenyl acetate (10.0 g, 32.2 mmol) in N,N-dimethylaniline (70 mL) was stirred under an argon atmosphere at 200°C for 3 h. After the reaction mixture was cooled, it was diluted with ethyl acetate, washed with 2N hydrochloric acid, and water, and dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (7.80 g, yield 78 %).

20 m.p.: 136-138°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 2.06 (6H, s), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.33 (3H, s), 4.83-5.18 (2H, m), 5.36 (1H, d, J = 10.0 Hz), 6.32-6.58 (1H, m), 7.18-7.37 (5H, m), 1H not confirmed.

#### 25 Reference Example 16

2,4,6,7-Tetramethyl-3-phenylbenzofuran-5-yl acetate

To a suspension of 4-hydroxy-2,3,6-trimethyl-5-(1-phenyl-2-propenyl)phenyl acetate (5.10 g, 16.4 mmol) and calcium carbonate (2.13 g, 21.3 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) and methanol (20 mL) was added benzyltrimethylammonium dichloroiodate (6.28 g, 18.0 mmol) slowly. The mixture was stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. The insoluble material was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added ethyl acetate and water. The organic layer was separated and



the aqueous layer was extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The combined organic layer was washed with 10% aqueous sodium hydrogen sulfite, water, an aqueous saturated solution of sodium bicarbonate and brine.

5 The organic layer was dried over magnesium sulfate, treated with activated carbon, filtrated and the filtrate was concentrated in vacuo to provide 5.30 g of 2-iodomethyl-4,6,7-trimethyl-3-phenyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl acetate. A mixture of this  
10 compound (5.30 g, 12.1 mmol) and 1,8-diazabicyclo[5,4,0]-7-undecene (9.0 m, 60.0 mmol) in toluene (20 mL) was stirred under an argon atmosphere at 100°C for 3 hours. To that mixture was added water, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The  
15 extract was washed with 2N hydrochloric acid, and water, dried over magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was purified by silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 20/1) to obtain the title compound (4.0 g, yield 79 %). This  
20 was oily.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.85 (3H, s), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.30 (3H, s), 2.33 (3H, s), 2.44 (3H, s), 7.32-7.48 (5H, m).

#### Reference Example 17

25 2,4,6,7-Tetramethyl-3-phenylbenzofuran-5-ol

To a solution of 2,4,6,7-tetramethyl-3-phenylbenzofuran-5-yl acetate (4.00 g, 13.0 mmol) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (32 mL) and methanol (8 mL) was added 8N sodium hydroxide solution (2.0 mL)  
30 dropwise and the mixture was stirred at 40°C for 1 hour. The solvent was then distilled off under reduced pressure. To the residue was added 2N hydrochloric acid, and the mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate. The extract was washed with water and brine, dried over  
35 magnesium sulfate, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was recrystallized from isopropyl



ether-hexane to obtain the title compound (3.0 g, yield 87 %).

m.p.: 102-104°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.96 (3H, s), 2.28 (3H, s), 2.29 (3H, s), 2.44 (3H, s), 4.42 (1H, s), 7.28-7.43 (5H, m).

#### Reference Example 18

1-(2,4-Dimethoxyphenyl)-1-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2-methylpropan-1-ol

Using 1-bromo-2,4-dimethoxybenzene and 1-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2-methylpropan-1-one the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Reference Example 6. Yield 56 %.

m.p.: 80-81°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.75 (3H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.08 (3H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.20 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.66 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 2.80 (1H, septet, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.48 (3H, s), 3.79 (3H, s), 4.71 (1H, s), 6.39-6.40 (1H, m), 6.50-6.56 (1H, m), 7.04-7.08 (2H, m), 7.19-7.23 (2H, m), 7.40-7.44 (1H, m).

#### Reference Example 19

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2-dimethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-6-ol

A mixture of 1-(2,4-dimethoxyphenyl)-1-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2-methylpropan-1-ol (5.58 g, 17.0 mmol) and 48 % hydrobromic acid (30 mL) was heated under reflux for 24 hours in an argon atmosphere. After the reaction mixture was cooled, an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate was added to the mixture, which was then extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with brine, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 20/1 to 10/1) to obtain the title



compound (2.43 g, yield 51 %).

m.p.: 114-115°C (from hexane).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.95 (3H, s), 1.24 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz),  
 1.57 (3H, s), 2.89 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.25 (1H,  
 5 s), 6.15 (1H, br), 6.34-6.38 (2H, m), 6.84-6.88 (1H, m),  
 6.99-7.03 (2H, m), 7.13-7.17 (2H, m).

#### Reference Example 20

##### 4-(4-Isopropylbenzoyl)piperidine

10 To 1-acetylisonipecotic acid (41.74 g, 243.8 mmol)  
 was added thionyl chloride (200 mL), and the resulting  
 mixture was stirred for 30 minutes. The mixture was  
 diluted with petroleum ether. The precipitated solid  
 was collected and washed with petroleum ether to afford  
 15 1-acetylisonipecotoyl chloride. This was added to a  
 stirring mixture of cumene (120 mL) and aluminium  
 chloride (69.6 g, 522 mmol) and the resulting mixture  
 was stirred at 110°C for 1 hour. The mixture was  
 poured into ice, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate.  
 20 The organic layers were combined, washed with brine,  
 dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and  
 concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue  
 was added concentrated hydrochloric acid (100 mL), and  
 the mixture was refluxed for 12 hours. The mixture was  
 25 cooled to room temperature and was washed twice with  
 diethyl ether. The aqueous solution was made basic  
 with 8N sodium hydroxide solution and then extracted  
 twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were  
 combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium  
 30 hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate,  
 filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The  
 residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to  
 obtain the title compound (23.5 g, yield 41 %).  
 m.p.: 55-57°C.

35 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.27 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.57-2.70 (5H,  
 m), 2.70-2.83 (2H, m), 2.97 (1H, septet, J = 6.8 Hz),



3.16-3.22 (2H, m), 3.34-3.46 (1H, m), 7.30-7.34 (2H, m),  
7.87-7.91 (2H, m).

#### Reference Example 21

##### 5 1-Benzyl-4-(4-isopropylbenzoyl)piperidine

To a solution of 4-(4-isopropylbenzoyl)piperidine  
in N,N-dimethylformamide (100 mL), potassium carbonate  
(9.60 g, 69.5 mmol) and benzyl bromide (8.50 g, 71.5  
mmol) were added, and the resulting mixture was stirred  
10 for 20 hours at room temperature. The mixture was  
poured into water, and extracted twice with ethyl  
acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with  
an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried  
over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated  
15 under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized  
from hexane to obtain the title compound (13.53 g,  
yield 66 %).  
m.p.: 76-77°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.26 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.79-1.90 (4H,  
20 m), 2.07-2.20 (2H, m), 2.92-2.99 (3H, m), 3.15-3.30 (1H,  
m), 3.55 (2H, s), 7.24-7.32 (7H, m), 7.85-7.89 (2H, m).

#### Reference Example 22

##### 25 (1-Benzyl-4-piperidyl)(2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6- trimethylphenyl)(4-isopropylphenyl)methanol

n-Butyllithium (1.6 M, 12.0 mL, 19.2 mmol) was  
added to a solution of 1-bromo-2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-  
trimethylbenzene (4.89 g, 18.87 mmol) in  
tetrahydrofuran (100 mL) at -78°C, and the mixture was  
30 stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. To the  
reaction mixture was added 1-benzyl-4-(4-  
isopropylbenzoyl)piperidine (5.02 g, 15.6 mmol). The  
mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same  
temperature, then poured into the water, and extracted  
35 twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were  
combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium



hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (6.54 g, yield 83 %).

5 m.p.: 105-108°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.19 (6H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 1.2-1.5 (2H, m), 1.8-2.0 (4H, m), 2.09 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.39 (3H, s), 2.4-2.5 (1H, m), 2.78-2.88 (3H, m), 2.97 (3H, s), 3.51 (2H, s), 3.60 (3H, s), 6.37 (1H, br), 7.08-  
10 7.12 (2H, m), 7.26-7.34 (7H, m).

#### Reference Example 23

1'-Benzyl-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol

15 To a solution of (1-benzyl-4-piperidyl)(2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)(4-isopropylphenyl)methanol (6.41 g, 12.8 mmol) in acetic acid (50 mL) was added 48% hydrobromic acid (60 mL), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 15 hours in  
20 an argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, made basic with 8N sodium hydroxide solution, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried  
25 over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (4.44 g, yield 76 %).

m.p.: 190-192°C.

30 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.19 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.21-1.41 (2H, m), 1.71-2.00 (5H, m), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.27-2.90 (5H, m), 2.97 (3H, s), 3.54 (2H, s), 4.02 (1H, s), 6.6-7.1 (4H, m), 7.20-7.32 (5H, m), 1H not confirmed.

35

#### Reference Example 24



3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol hydrochloride

To a solution of 1'-benzyl-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol (3.51 g, 7.70 mmol) and triethylamine (1.1 mL, 7.9 mmol) in chloroform (40 mL)  $\alpha$ -chloroethyl chloroformate (2.30 g, 16.1 mmol) was added at 0°C. The mixture was refluxed for 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was refluxed in methanol (20 mL) for 1 hour and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethanol-ethyl acetate to obtain the title compound (2.80 g, yield 90 %). m.p.: >245°C (dec.)

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(*d*<sub>6</sub>-DMSO)  $\delta$ : 1.18 (6H, d, *J* = 6.6 Hz), 1.34 (2H, br), 1.71 (3H, s), 1.97 (2H, br), 2.08 (3H, s), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.8-3.3 (5H, m), 4.26 (1H, s), 6.6-7.2 (4H, m), 7.53 (1H, s), 8.78 (1H, s), 1H not confirmed.

#### Reference Example 25

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-1',4,6,7-tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol

A mixture of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol hydrochloride (2.80 g, 6.97 mmol), formic acid (30 mL) and 37% formalin (30 mL) was stirred for 15 hours at 100°C. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, made basic with 8N sodium hydroxide solution, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (Chromatorex NH DM1020, Fujii Silysia Chemical LTD) (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/1) to obtain the title compound (2.05 g, yield 77 %). m.p.: 114-117°C (from ethyl acetate-hexane).



$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3)$   $\delta$ : 1.18-1.39 (8H, m), 1.72-2.91 (19H, m), 4.02 (1H, m), 6.6-7.1 (4H, m), 1H not confirmed.

#### Reference Example 26

5 (1-Benzyl-4-piperidyl)(2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)methanol

n-Butyllithium (1.6 M, 19.5 mL, 31.2 mmol) was added to a solution of 1-bromo-2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylbenzene (8.00 g, 30.87 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (80 mL) at  $-78^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 1-benzyl-4-formylpiperidine (6.23 g, 30.65 mmol). The mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature, then poured into water, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (ethyl acetate) to obtain the title compound (6.17 g, yield 52 %). This was oily.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3)$   $\delta$ : 1.17-2.05 (7H, m), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.79-2.85 (1H, m), 2.98-3.05 (1H, m), 3.48 (2H, s), 3.61 (3H, s), 3.75 (3H, s), 4.59 (1H, m), 7.23-7.32 (5H, m), 1H not confirmed.

#### Reference Example 27

1'-Benzyl-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol

30 To a solution of (1-benzyl-4-piperidyl)(2,5-dimethoxy-3,4,6-trimethylphenyl)methanol (6.10 g, 15.9 mmol) in acetic acid (30 mL) was added 48% hydrobromic acid (40 mL), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 15 hours in an argon atmosphere. The reaction mixture was cooled to room temperature, made basic with 35 8N sodium hydroxide solution, and extracted twice with



ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/1) to obtain the title compound (4.60 g, yield 86 %). This was amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.71-2.00 (6H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.12 (3H, s), 2.58 (2H, m), 2.87 (2H, s), 3.56 (2H, s), 7.25-7.38 (5H, m), 1H not confirmed.

#### Example 1

5-Benzylloxy-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 68 mg, 1.70 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol (0.5 g, 1.54 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (20 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added benzyl bromide (290 mg, 1.70 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for further 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water (30 mL), and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from methanol to obtain the title compound (380 mg, yield 60 %).

m.p.: 79-81°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.01 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.50 (3H, s), 1.83 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet, J = 6.8 Hz), 4.09 (1H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.70-7.00 (2H, br), 7.09 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.30-7.50 (5H, m).



## Example 2

5-Benzyloxy-3-[4-(dimethylamino)phenyl]-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 3-[4-(dimethylamino)phenyl]-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and benzyl bromide, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 40 %.

m.p.: 110-112°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.03 (3H, s), 1.48 (3H, s), 1.87 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.91 (6H, s), 4.04 (1H, s), 4.70 (2H, s), 6.48-7.16 (4H, m), 7.20-7.48 (5H, m).

## Example 3

5-Benzyloxy-2,4,6,7-tetramethyl-2-(4-phenyl-1-piperazinyl)methyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 2,4,6,7-tetramethyl-2-(4-phenyl-1-piperazinyl)methyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and benzyl bromide, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 48 %.

m.p.: 120-121°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.47 (3H, s), 2.09 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.20 (3H, s), 2.58-2.92 (7H, m), 3.08-3.22 (5H, m), 4.71 (2H, s), 6.78-6.94 (3H, m), 7.20-7.52 (7H, m).

## Example 4

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-methoxybenzyl chloride, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 49 %.

m.p.: 95-96°C (from methanol).



<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.00 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz),  
 1.49 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s),  
 2.86 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.08 (1H,  
 s), 4.63 (2H, s), 6.70-7.18 (6H, m), 7.35 (2H, d, J =  
 8.8 Hz).

#### Example 5

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2-  
 dimethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using (4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2-dimethyl-2,3-  
 dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-methoxybenzyl chloride,  
 the title compound was obtained in the same manner as  
 in Example 1.

Yield: 75 %.

m.p.: 124-126°C (from ethyl acetate-hexane).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.95 (3H, s), 1.25 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz),  
 1.57 (3H, s), 2.90 (septet, 1H, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.71 (3H,  
 s), 4.30 (1H, s), 4.87 (2H, s), 6.65-7.35 (11H, m).

#### Example 6

3-[4-(Dimethylamino)phenyl]-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-  
 2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 3-[4-(dimethylamino)phenyl]-2,2,4,6,7-  
 pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-  
 methoxybenzyl chloride, the title compound was obtained  
 in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 42 %.

m.p.: 105-107°C (from ethanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.02 (3H, s), 1.48 (3H, s), 1.84 (3H,  
 s), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.92 (6H, s), 3.81 (3H,  
 s), 4.04 (1H, s), 4.58-4.69 (2H, m), 6.54-6.93 (6H, m),  
 7.30-7.42 (2H, m).

#### Example 7

5-(4-Methoxybenzyloxy)-3-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]-  
 2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran



Using 2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-3-[4-(4-morpholinyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-methoxybenzyl chloride, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

5 Yield: 38 %.

m.p.: 110-112°C (ethanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.01 (3H, s), 1.48 (3H, s), 1.83 (3H, s), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 3.02-3.26 (4H, m), 3.71-3.99 (7H, m), 4.05 (1H, s), 4.57-4.90 (2H, m),  
10 6.60-7.00 (6H, m), 7.35 (2H, d, J = 6.8 Hz).

#### Example 8

5-(4-Methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

15 Using 2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-3-[4-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)phenyl]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-methoxybenzyl chloride, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 42 %.

20 m.p.: 121-122°C (from ethyl ether-hexane).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.01 (3H, s), 1.48 (3H, s), 1.83 (3H, s), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.52-2.63 (4H, m), 3.13-3.24 (4H, m), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.05 (1H, s), 4.58-4.67 (2H, m), 6.60-7.07 (6H, m), 7.35 (2H, d, J =  
25 8.8 Hz).

#### Example 9

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(4-methylthiobenzyloxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

30 Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-(bromomethyl)phenyl methyl sulfide, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 70 %.

35 m.p.: 118-120°C (from ethanol).



<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.01 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.49 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.48 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.08 (1H, s), 4.65 (2H, s), 6.80-7.02 (2H, br), 7.08 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.25 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.36 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz).

#### Example 10

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-[4-(methylsulfinyl)benzyloxy]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Sodium periodate (0.766 g, 3.58 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(4-methylthiobenzyloxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran (1.50 g, 3.26 mmol) in a mixture of ethanol (80 mL) and water (8 mol), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 2 hours. To the reaction mixture were added ethyl acetate and water to separate it into two layers, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (1.23 g, yield 79 %).

m.p.: 132-134°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.02 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.50 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.71, 2.72 (1.5H x2, s x2), 2.86 (1H, septet, J = 6.8 Hz), 4.09 (1H, s), 4.76 (2H, s), 6.71-7.15 (4H, m), 7.57-7.69 (4H, m).

#### Example 11

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-[4-(methylsulfonyl)benzyloxy]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Sodium periodate (2.02 g, 9.45 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-



pentamethyl-5-[(4-methylsulfinyl)benzyloxy]-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran (1.50 g, 3.15 mmol) in a mixture of ethanol (80 mL) and water (8 mol), and the mixture was heated under reflux for 18 hours. To the reaction mixture were added ethyl acetate and water to separate it into two layers, and the aqueous layer was extracted with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was recrystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (1.05 g, yield 68 %).

m.p.: 161-162°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.02 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.50 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.87 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.05 (3H, s), 4.09 (1H, s), 4.80 (2H, s), 6.70-7.13 (4H, m), 7.67 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz), 7.95 (2H, d, J = 8.4 Hz).

#### Example 12

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(3-phenyl-2-propen-1-yloxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 3-bromo-1-phenyl-1-propene, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 71 %.

m.p.: 106-107°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.00 (3H, s), 1.21 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.49 (3H, s), 1.86 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.85 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.08 (1H, s), 4.36 (2H, d, J = 6.0 Hz), 6.42 (1H, dt, J = 15.4, 6.0 Hz), 6.66-7.15 (5H, m), 7.20-7.48 (5H, m).

#### Example 13



3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(2-quinolylmethoxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran hydrochloride

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 136 mg, 3.39 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol (1.0 g, 3.08 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (30 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 10 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 2-(chloromethyl)quinoline hydrochloride (730 mg, 3.39 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at 80°C. The reaction mixture was poured into water (40 mL), and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. To the residue was added 4 N HCl-ethanol, and the solvent was removed through distillation. The residue was crystallized from ethanol-hexane to obtain the title compound (1.1 g, yield 71 %).

m.p.: 136-139°C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (DMSO-d<sub>6</sub>) δ: 0.94 (3H, s), 1.18 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.45 (3H, s), 1.78 (3H, s), 2.11 (3H, s), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.85 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.19 (1H, s), 4.20-4.90 (1H, br), 5.10 (1H, d, J = 15.8 Hz), 5.19 (1H, d, J = 15.8 Hz), 6.65-7.05 (2H, br), 7.13 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.72-7.85 (1H, m), 7.91-8.02 (2H, m), 8.15-8.30 (2H, m), 8.80 (1H, d, J = 8.8 Hz).

#### Example 14

5-(3,3-Diphenylpropyloxy)-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 3,3-diphenylpropyl methanesulfonate, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1. This was oily.

Yield: 55 %.



<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.99 (3H, s), 1.21 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.45 (3H, s), 1.71 (3H, s), 2.08 (3H, s), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.48 (1H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.55 (1H, d, J = 6.6 Hz), 2.76-2.93 (1H, m), 3.60 (2H, t, J = 6.6 Hz), 4.07 (1H, s), 4.25 (1H, t, J = 8.0 Hz), 6.60-7.00 (2H, br), 7.06 (2H, d, J = 7.6 Hz), 7.10-7.34 (10H, m).

#### Example 15

Methyl 4-[[3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl]oxymethyl]benzoate

Using methyl 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and methyl 4-(bromomethyl)methylbenzoate, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 82 %.

m.p.: 108-110°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.01 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.50 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.92 (3H, s), 4.09 (1H, s), 4.76 (2H, s), 6.65-7.00 (2H, br), 7.08 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.51 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 8.04 (2H, d, J = 8.2 Hz).

07 (1H, s), 4.21-4.37 (4H, m), 6.63-6.98 (2H, br), 7.07 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz).

#### Example 16

Methyl α-[[3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yl]oxy]phenylacetate

Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and methyl α-bromophenylacetate, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1. This was oily.

Yield: 82 %.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.99 (3H, s), 1.21, 1.23 (6H, each d, J = 7.0 Hz), 1.47 (3H, s), 1.57, 1.60 (3H, each s),



2.00, 2.04 (3H, each s), 2.09, 2.11 (3H, each s), 2.75-2.98 (1H, m), 3.70, 3.74 (3H, each s), 4.01 (1H, s), 5.07 (1H, s), 6.60-6.95 (2H, br), 7.06 (2H, d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz), 7.24-7.50 (5H, m).

5

#### Example 17

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(2-pyridylmethoxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

10 Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 2-chloromethylpyridine hydrochloride, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1.

Yield: 17 %.

m.p.: 88-89°C (from methanol).

15  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.02 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.51 (3H, s), 1.83 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 4.10 (1H, s), 4.80 (1H, d,  $J = 15.8$  Hz), 4.89 (1H, d,  $J = 15.8$  Hz), 6.72-7.02 (2H, br), 7.09 (2H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.15-7.25 (1H, m),  
20 7.67-7.81 (2H, m), 8.50-8.58 (1H, m).

#### Example 18

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(3-pyridylmethoxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

25 Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 3-chloromethylpyridine hydrochloride, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1. This was oily.

Yield: 76 %.

30  $^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.02 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.50 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 4.09 (1H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.63-7.02 (2H, br), 7.09 (2H, d,  $J = 8.2$  Hz), 7.24 (1H, dd,  $J = 7.8, 5.0$  Hz), 7.78 (1H, d,  $J = 7.6$  Hz),  
35 8.56 (1H, d,  $J = 4.0$  Hz), 8.60-8.71 (1H, br).



## Example 19

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(4-pyridylmethoxy)-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol and 4-chloromethylpyridine hydrochloride, the title compound was obtained in the same manner as in Example 1. This was oily.  
Yield: 52 %.

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.02 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.50 (3H, s), 1.82 (3H, s), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.78-2.93 (1H, m), 4.08 (1H, s), 4.73 (2H, s), 6.62-7.01 (2H, br), 7.09 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.38 (2H, d,  $J = 5.8$  Hz), 8.60 (2H, d,  $J = 5.8$  Hz).

## Example 20

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-5-(2,4-dinitrophenyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 270 mg, 6.75 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol (2.0 g, 6.16 mmol) in  $N,N$ -dimethylformamide (30 mL) at  $0^\circ\text{C}$ , and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 1-chloro-2,4-dinitrobenzene (1.37 g, 6.78 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for 20 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water (50 mL), and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethyl acetate-hexane to obtain the title compound (1.5 g, yield 50 %).

m.p.:  $137-139^\circ\text{C}$ .

$^1\text{H-NMR}$  ( $\text{CDCl}_3$ )  $\delta$ : 1.04 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.57 (3H, s), 1.66 (3H, s), 2.03 (3H, s), 2.19 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 4.13 (1H, s), 6.62-6.95



(3H, m), 7.11 (2H, d,  $J = 8.0$  Hz), 8.26 (1H, dd,  $J = 9.2, 2.6$  Hz), 8.75-8.86 (1H, m).

#### Example 21

5 5-(2,4-Bisacetylaminophenyloxy)-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-  
2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran  
3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-5-(2,4-dinitrophenyloxy)-  
2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran (800 mg,  
1.63 mmol) and 10 % palladium-carbon (hydrate) (80 mg)  
10 were dispersed in ethanol (40 mL), and the mixture was  
stirred in a hydrogen atmosphere at 60°C for 4 hours.  
The reaction mixture, from which was removed the  
catalyst through filtration, was concentrated under  
reduced pressure to obtain 5-(2,4-diaminophenoxy)-3-(4-  
15 isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-  
dihydrobenzofuran (710 mg). Acetyl chloride (0.26 mL,  
3.63 mmol) was added to a solution of the thus-obtained  
compound (710 mg, 1.65 mmol) and triethylamine (290 mg,  
1.70 mmol) in chloroform (30 mL) at 0°C, and the  
20 mixture was stirred for 1 hour at the same temperature.  
The reaction mixture was poured into water (30 mL), and  
extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers  
were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium  
hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate,  
25 filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The  
residue was subjected to silica gel column  
chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/5) to obtain  
the title compound (640 mg, yield 76 %). This was  
amorphous.

30 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ : 1.04 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d,  $J = 6.8$  Hz),  
1.52 (3H, s), 1.64 (3H, s), 2.00 (3H, s), 2.12 (3H, s),  
2.18 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.86 (1H, septet,  $J = 6.8$   
Hz), 4.11 (1H, s), 6.30 (1H, d,  $J = 9.2$  Hz), 6.60-7.03  
(2H, br), 7.05 (2H, d,  $J = 8.4$  Hz), 7.54 (1H, dd,  $J =$   
35 9.2, 2.6 Hz), 7.69 (1H, br s), 8.02 (1H, s), 8.21 (1H,  
d,  $J = 2.6$  Hz).



## Example 22

$\alpha$ -[3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yloxy]phenylacetic acid

5        An aqueous solution of 2 N sodium hydroxide (2.5 mL) was dropwise added to a solution of methyl  $\alpha$ -[3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yloxy]phenylacetate (1.20 g, 2.54 mmol) in a mixture of tetrahydrofuran (24 mL) and  
10        methanol (6 mL), and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, to which was added 2 N hydrochloric acid. Then, this was extracted twice  
15        with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were washed with water, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The resulting residue was recrystallized from hexane to obtain the title compound (0.31 g, yield 27 %), which was a  
20        mixture of diastereomers (ratio: 8/1).  
m.p.: 163-166°C.  
<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ : 0.98 (3H, s), 1.12-1.25 (6H, m), 1.41-1.56 (6H, m), 1.92-2.10 (6H, m), 2.87 (1H, septet, J = 6.6 Hz), 3.99 (1H, s), 5.08-5.10 (1H, m), 5.20-6.00 (1H, br), 6.60-7.17 (4H, m), 7.20-7.39 (5H, m).

25

## Example 23

$\alpha$ -[3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-yloxy]phenylacetic acid

30        The filtrate in Example 22 was concentrated under reduced pressure to obtain the title compound (0.50 g, yield 43 %), which was amorphous and was a mixture of diastereomers (ratio: 1/3).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>)  $\delta$ : 0.98 (3H, s), 1.16-1.26 (6H, m), 1.39-1.56 (6H, m), 1.91- 2.10 (6H, m), 2.84 (1H, septet, J =



6.8 Hz), 4.00 (1H, m), 5.07-5.10 (1H, s), 5.40-6.30 (1H, br), 6.50-7.14 (4H, m), 7.20-7.40 (5H, m).

#### Example 24

5 3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(3-phenyl-1-propyl)oxy-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(3-phenyl-2-propen-1-yl)oxy-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran (800 mg, 1.82 mmol) and 10 % palladium-carbon (hydrate) (80 mg)  
10 were suspended in ethanol (20 mL), and the mixture was stirred for 3 hours in a hydrogen atmosphere at room temperature. The catalyst was removed through filtration, and the filtrate was concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was crystallized from  
15 methanol to obtain the title compound (610 mg, yield 76 %).

m.p.: 78-80° C.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.99 (3H, s), 1.22 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.48 (3H, s), 1.81 (3H, s), 2.02-2.22 (8H, m), 2.76-  
20 2.91 (3H, m), 3.68 (2H, t, J = 6.4 Hz), 4.07 (1H, s), 6.70-6.92 (2H, br), 7.07 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.15-7.32 (5H, m).

#### Example 25

25 3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-5-(2-phenylethyl)oxy-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

A solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-5-ol (1.0 g, 3.08 mmol), 2-phenylethanol (414 mg, 3.39 mmol),  
30 triphenylphosphine (890 mg, 3.39 mmol) and diethyl azodicarboxylate (590 mg, 3.39 mmol) in tetrahydrofuran (20 mL) was stirred for 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was concentrated under reduced pressure, and the residue was subjected to silica gel  
35 column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 100/1) to obtain the title compound (150 mg, yield 11 %).



m.p.: 72-74°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.98 (3H, s), 1.21 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz),  
1.46 (3H, s), 1.72 (3H, s), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.12 (3H, s),  
2.83 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.05 (2H, t, J = 7.0 Hz),  
5 3.85 (2H, t, J = 7.0 Hz), 4.03 (1H, s), 6.65-7.00 (2H,  
br), 7.06 (2H, d, J = 8.0 Hz), 7.15-7.50 (5H, m).

#### Example 26

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran-5-  
10 yl 4-methoxybenzoate

Triethylamine (0.45 mL, 3.21 mmol) was added to a  
solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-  
tetramethylbenzofuran-5-ol (0.90 g, 2.92 mmol) and 4-  
methoxybenzoyl chloride (0.55 g, 3.21 mmol) in  
15 chloroform (15 mL) at room temperature, and the mixture  
was stirred for 3 hours at 60°C. Water (30 mL) was  
poured into the reaction mixture, which was then  
extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers  
were combined, washed with 1 N hydrochloric acid and  
20 saturated sodium hydroxide, dried over magnesium  
sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced  
pressure. The residue was crystallized from ethanol to  
obtain the title compound (0.52 g, yield 79 %).  
m.p.: 113-115°C.

25 <sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.28 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.90 (3H, s),  
2.18 (3H, s), 2.33 (3H, s), 2.46 (3H, s), 2.95 (1H,  
septet, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.89 (3H, s), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 9.0  
Hz), 7.25 (4H, s), 8.20 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz).

#### 30 Example 27

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,4,6,7-  
tetramethylbenzofuran

Using 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-  
tetramethylbenzofuran-5-ol and 4-methoxybenzyl chloride,  
35 the title compound was obtained in the same manner as  
in Example 1. This was oily.



Yield: 64 %.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.31 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 2.06 (3H, s),  
2.31 (3H, s), 2.34 (3H, s), 2.43 (3H, s), 2.97 (1H,  
septet, J = 6.8 Hz), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.66 (2H, s), 6.91  
5 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz), 7.26 (4H, s), 7.40 (2H, d, J = 8.8  
Hz).

#### Example 28

2,4,6,7-Tetramethyl-3-phenylbenzofuran-5-yl 4-  
10 methoxybenzoate

Using 2,4,6,7-tetramethyl-3-phenylbenzofuran-5-ol  
and 4-methoxybenzoyl chloride, the title compound was  
obtained in the same manner as in Example 26.

Yield 64%.

15 m.p.: 152-154°C (from methanol).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR (CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.88 (3H, s), 2.18 (3H, s), 2.32 (3H,  
s), 2.46 (3H, s), 3.89 (3H, s), 6.99 (2H, d, J = 9.2  
Hz), 7.29-7.43 (5H, m), 8.20 (2H, d, J = 9.2 Hz).

#### 20 Examples 29

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-6-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2-  
dimethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion,  
179.0 mg, 4.48 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-  
25 isopropylphenyl)-2,2-dimethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran-6-  
ol (1.12 g, 4.00 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 mL)  
at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at  
the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was  
added 4-methoxybenzyl chloride (636.8 mg, 4.07 mmol)  
30 and the mixture was stirred for further 30 minutes at  
room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into  
water, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The  
organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous  
saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over  
35 magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under  
reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica



gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 5/1) to obtain the title compound (1.19 g, yield 74 %).

m.p.: 86-88°C (from hexane).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 0.95 (3H, s), 1.24 (6H, d, J = 7.0 Hz),  
5 1.58 (3H, s), 2.89 (1H, septet, J = 7.0 Hz), 3.82 (3H, s), 4.27 (1H, s), 4.96 (2H, s), 6.47-6.52 (2H, m), 6.90-6.95 (3H, m), 7.02 (2H, d, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.16 (2H, d, J = 8.1 Hz), 7.37 (2H, d, J = 8.8 Hz).

10 Example 30

1'-Benzyl-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 81.4 mg, 1.81 mmol) was added to a solution of 1'-  
15 benzyl-3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol (824.0 mg, 1.81 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was  
20 added 4-methoxybenzyl chloride (319.9 mg, 2.04 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for further 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous  
25 saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 3/1) to obtain the title compound (539 mg, yield 52 %).

30 This was amorphous.

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.20 (6H, d, J = 6.8 Hz), 1.27-1.39 (2H, m), 1.81 (3H, s), 1.86-1.96 (2H, m), 2.19 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.35-2.87 (5H, m), 3.52 (2H, s), 3.80 (3H, s), 4.04 (1H, s), 4.62 (2H, s), 6.6-6.9 (4H, m), 7.04-7.08  
35 (2H, m), 7.22-7.36 (7H, m).



## Example 31

1'-Benzyl-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 134.6 mg, 3.37 mmol) was added to a solution of 1'-benzyl-4,6,7-trimethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol (1.01 g, 2.98 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (15 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 4-methoxybenzyl chloride (584.9 mg, 3.43 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for further 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (hexane/ethyl acetate = 2/1) to obtain the title compound (1.15 g, yield 85 %).

m.p.: 85-86°C (from hexane).

<sup>1</sup>H-NMR(CDCl<sub>3</sub>) δ: 1.80-2.00 (4H, m), 2.10 (3H, s), 2.15 (3H, s), 2.18 (3H, s), 2.60 (4H, br), 2.87 (2H, s), 3.58 (2H, s), 3.83 (3H, s), 4.62 (2H, s), 6.90-6.95 (2H, m), 7.30-7.43 (7H, m).

## Example 32

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-1',4,6,7-tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 64.3 mmol, 1.61 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-1',4,6,7-tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol (509.0 mg, 1.34 mmol) in N,N-dimethylformamide (25 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 4-methoxybenzyl chloride



(244.0 mg, 1.56 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for further 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column chromatography (Chromatorex NH DM1020, Fuji Silysia Chemical LTD) (hexane/ethyl acetate = 1/1) to obtain the title compound (262 mg, yield 39 %). This was amorphous.

$^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3)$   $\delta$ : 1.21 (6H, d,  $J$  = 7.0 Hz), 1.3-1.4 (2H, m), 1.82 (3H, s), 1.99-2.04 (2H, m), 2.19 (3H, s), 2.23 (3H, s), 2.30 (3H, s), 2.37-2.70 (4H, m), 2.82 (1H, septet,  $J$  = 7.0 Hz), 3.81 (3H, s), 4.05 (1H, s), 4.62 (2H, s), 6.6-6.9 (4H, m), 7.05-7.09 (2H, m), 7.33-7.37 (2H, m).

### Example 33

3-(4-Isopropylphenyl)-1',4,6,7-tetramethyl-5-(4-pyridylmethoxy)spiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]

Sodium hydride (60 % liquid paraffin dispersion, 187.3 mg, 4.98 mmol) was added to a solution of 3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-1',4,6,7-tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine]-5-ol (817.7 mg, 2.15 mmol) in *N,N*-dimethylformamide (30 mL) at 0°C, and the mixture was stirred for 30 minutes at the same temperature. To the reaction mixture was added 4-chloromethylpyridine hydrochloride (364.5 mg, 2.22 mmol) and the mixture was stirred for further 30 minutes at room temperature. The reaction mixture was poured into water, and extracted twice with ethyl acetate. The organic layers were combined, washed with an aqueous saturated sodium hydrogencarbonate, dried over magnesium sulfate, filtered, and concentrated under reduced pressure. The residue was subjected to silica gel column



chromatography (Chromatorex NH DM1020, Fuji Silysia Chemical LTD) (hexane/ethyl acetate = 4/1) to obtain the title compound (575 mg, yield 57 %).

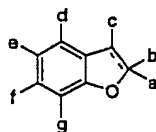
m.p.: 96-98°C (from hexane).

- 5  $^1\text{H-NMR}(\text{CDCl}_3)$   $\delta$ : 1.21 (6H, d,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 1.34-1.41 (2H, m), 1.82 (3H, s), 1.92-2.11 (2H, m), 2.19 (3H, s), 2.21 (3H, s), 2.30 (3H, s), 2.37-2.65 (4H, m), 2.85 (1H, septet,  $J = 7.0$  Hz), 4.05 (1H, s), 4.72 (2H, s), 6.6-7.1 (4H, m), 7.36-7.39 (2H, m), 8.58-8.61 (2H, m).

10

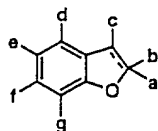
The chemical structural formulae of the compounds obtained in these Examples are shown below.





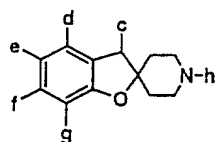
Ex. No.	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	—
1	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
2	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
3	Me		H	Me		Me	Me	—
4	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
5	Me	Me		H		H	H	—
6	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
7	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
8	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
9	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
10	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
11	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
12	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
13	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
14	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—





Ex. No.	a	b	c	d	e	f	g	=
15	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
16	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
17	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
18	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
19	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
20	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
21	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
22	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
23	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
24	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
25	Me	Me		Me		Me	Me	—
26	Me	-		Me		Me	Me	=
27	Me	-		Me		Me	Me	=
28	Me	-		Me		Me	Me	=
29	Me	Me		H	H		H	—





Ex. No.	c	d	e	f	g	h
30		Me		Me	Me	
31	H	Me		Me	Me	
32		Me		Me	Me	Me
33		Me		Me	Me	Me



## Formulation Example 1

	(1) Compound obtained in Example 4	50 mg
	(2) Lactose	34 mg
	(3) Corn starch	10.6 mg
5	(4) Corn starch (paste)	5 mg
	(5) Magnesium stearate	0.4 mg
	(6) Calcium carboxymethyl cellulose	20 mg
	Total	120 mg

10 (1) to (6) were mixed in an ordinary manner, and  
tabletted into tablets using a tableting machine.

## Experimental Example 1

15 Evaluation of cell protective activity against  $\beta$ -  
amyloid neurotoxicity in human neuroblastoma SK-N-SH  
cells

Method

## a) Material Used

20 Human neuroblastoma SK-N-SH cells: obtained from  
American Type Tissue Culture Collection (ATCC).  
DMEM/F-12 medium: obtained from Nikken Biological  
Medicine Laboratory Co.  
Ca<sup>++</sup> and Mg<sup>++</sup> free phosphate-buffered saline (PBS(-  
)): obtained from Nikken Biological Medicine  
25 Laboratory Co.  
N2 supplement <sup>TM</sup>, and EDTA solution: obtained from  
Gibco BRL Co.  
Fetal calf serum, and mixture of penicillin (5000  
U/mL) and streptomycin (5 mg/mL): obtained from Bio  
30 Whittaker Co.  
Recombinant human interferon gamma (rhIFN- $\gamma$ ):  
obtained from Wako Pure Chemical Co.  
Alamar Blue <sup>TM</sup> reagent: obtained from AccuMed  
International, Inc.  
35 Culture flasks: manufactured by Falcon Co.  
Collagen-coated, 96-well multi-plate: manufactured



by Iwaki Glass Co.

$\beta$ -amyloid 25-35: obtained from Bachem AG.

Other reagents: commercially-available special-grade chemicals.

5

b) Test Method

(1) Cultivation of SK-N-SH cells

SK-N-SH cells were sub-cultured in DMEM/F12 medium containing 5 % FCS, 0.5 % N2 supplement<sup>TM</sup>, 1 % of  
10 mixture of penicillin (5000 U/mL) and streptomycin (5 mg/mL), under 10 % CO<sub>2</sub> and 90 % air, using CO<sub>2</sub> incubator. At sub-confluent condition, cells were harvested from culture flask with PBS(-) containing 2.5 mM EDTA, and  
15 plated at a density of  $1.0 \times 10^4$  cells/100  $\mu$ l of culture medium/well in collagen-coated 96-well multi-plate. The next day, 80  $\mu$ l of culture medium was substituted with DMEM/F12 medium (containing neither FCS nor N2 supplement) containing 1.25 ng/mL of rhIFN- $\gamma$ ,  
20 and after 24 hr cultivation cells were used for cell toxicity assay mentioned below.

(2) Measurement of cell protective activity of test compounds against  $\beta$ -amyloid 25-35-induced neurotoxicity

After pretreatment of SK-N-SH cells with rhIFN- $\gamma$   
25 in collagen-coated 96 well multi-plate, cell toxicity assay was started by addition of  $\beta$ -amyloid 25-35 and test compound. Briefly, 80  $\mu$ l of culture medium was removed, and 40  $\mu$ l of  $\beta$ -amyloid 25-35 and 40  $\mu$ l of test compound were added to cultures at the same time.  
30 The final concentrations of  $\beta$ -amyloid 25-35 and test compounds were 10  $\mu$ M and 1  $\mu$ M, respectively.

The test compound was dissolved at 10 mM in dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO) and diluted in DMEM/F12 medium.  $\beta$ -amyloid 25-35 was dissolved at 5 mM in sterile pure  
35 water, and stored at -80°C. Immediately before use,



the stock solution  $\beta$ -amyloid 25-35 was diluted in DMEM/F12 medium and sonicated.

(3) Evaluation of cell protective activity of test compound

Cell viability was assessed by the reduction of Alamar Blue™ reagents, 3 days after starting of the cell toxicity assay. Briefly, 20  $\mu$ l of culture medium was substituted with 20  $\mu$ l of Alamar Blue™ reagents and incubated 4 hours. Absorbances were determined at wavelengths of 570 nm and 600 nm using a plate reader (MTP-32 Micro-plate Reader, manufactured by Corona Co.). Amount of reduced Alamar Blue™ reagents was determined by subtracting absorbance<sub>600</sub> from absorbance<sub>570</sub>. The cell protective activity of the test compound was estimated according to the following equation:

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{Cell protective activity of compound} \\ &= [(A-B)/(C-B)] \times 100 (\%) \end{aligned}$$

where;

A: cell viability of the group treated with both the test compound and  $\beta$ -amyloid

B: cell viability of the group treated with  $\beta$ -amyloid only

C: cell viability of the control group

### Results

Cell viability of the group treated with both the test compound and  $\beta$ -amyloid was compared with that group treated with  $\beta$ -amyloid only using Dunnett's test. Cell viability of each group was determined using at least 4 culture well. The data obtained are shown in the following Table.



Compound of Example	Cell Protecting Activity (%)
1	30.7
2	27.9
3	39.4
7	27.3
12	44.8
14	44.2
25	47.0

These data verify that compound (I) and compound (Ia) well suppress  $\beta$ -amyloid toxicity.

5

#### INDUSTRIAL APPLICABILITY

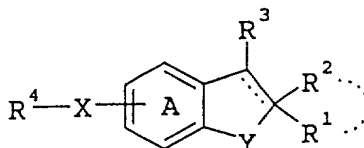
Compounds (I) and (Ia) have excellent suppressive effects on neurodegeneration and good permeability to the brain, while having low toxicity, and are therefore useful as medicines for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases.

10



## CLAIMS

1. A compound of the formula:



- 5 wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each represents a hydrogen atom or a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted;
- 10  $R^3$  represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl which may be substituted or an aromatic group which may be substituted;
- $R^4$  represents (1) an aromatic group which may be substituted, (2) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted or (3) an acyl;
- 15 X and Y each represents an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom which may be oxidized;
- 20 ---- represents a single bond or a double bond; and ring A represents a benzene ring which may be further substituted apart from the group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$  wherein each symbol is as defined above, provided that when X and Y are oxygen atoms and ---- is
- 25 a single bond,  $R^4$  is not an acyl, or a salt thereof.

2. A compound of Claim 1, wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is
- (i) a hydrogen atom or
- (ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl or  $C_{6-14}$  aryl group which may be substituted
- 30 by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7)



optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally  
 halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, (10)  
 optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (11) optionally  
 halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino,  
 5 (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (16)  
 di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (17) di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (18) acyl  
 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-  
 10 carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-  
 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-  
 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and  
 15 C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (19) acylamino selected from the  
 group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido,  
 C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (20)  
 acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 20 alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-  
 carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-  
 carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,  
 (21) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may  
 be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 25 group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-  
 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (22) 5- to 10-  
 membered aromatic heterocyclic group and (23) sulfo, or  
 R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon  
 atom, a C<sub>3-8</sub> cycloalkane or a 3- to 8-membered  
 30 heterocyclic ring, each of which may be substituted by  
 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting  
 of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylamino, mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-  
 C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino and 5- to 10-membered aromatic  
 35 heterocyclic group;  
 R<sup>3</sup> is (i) a hydrogen atom,



- (ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl, (10) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15) mono- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (16) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (17) di- $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (18) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (19) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (20) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (21) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (22) 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group and (23) sulfo, or (iii) a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents



selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms,  
 (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5)  
 optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally  
 halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$   
 5 alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9)  
 optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10) optionally  
 halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino,  
 (13) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (14) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15)  
 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 10 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-  
 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl  
 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 15  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-  
 carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-  
 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-  
 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$   
 20 alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  
 $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the  
 group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  
 $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (18)  
 25 acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$   
 alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-  
 carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-  
 carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,  
 (19) sulfo, (20)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and (21)  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy;  
 30  $R^4$  is (i) a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic  
 heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms  
 selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur  
 and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of  
 which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 35 selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms,  
 (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5)  
 optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally



halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, (ii) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl and C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, which hydrocarbon group substituted by 1 to 3 C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally



halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (16) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (17) di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, (18) acyl selected from the group



consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (19) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (20) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (21) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (22) 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group and (23) sulfo, or (iii) an acyl of the formula:  $-(C=O)-R^5$ ,  $-(C=O)-OR^5$ ,  $-(C=O)-NR^5R^6$ ,  $-(C=S)-NHR^5$ ,  $-SO_2-R^{5a}$  or  $-SO-R^{5a}$  wherein R<sup>5</sup> is (a) a hydrogen atom, (b) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15)



5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and (21)  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy, or (c) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl,  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl or  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1)  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1') halogen atoms, (2')  $C_{1-3}$  alkylendioxy, (3') nitro, (4') cyano, (5') optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6') optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7') optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8') optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9') optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10') optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11') hydroxy, (12') amino, (13') mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (14') di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15') 5- to 7-



membered saturated cyclic amino which may be  
 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the  
 group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-  
 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16') acyl  
 5 selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy,  
 carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  
 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-  
 carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-  
 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-  
 10 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-  
 carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and  
 C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17') acylamino selected from the  
 group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido,  
 15 C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18')  
 acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-  
 carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-  
 20 carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy,  
 (19') sulfo, (20') C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21') C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, (2)  
 halogen atoms, (3) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (4) nitro, (5)  
 cyano, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (7)  
 optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (8) optionally  
 25 halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub>  
 cycloalkyl, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy,  
 (11) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy,  
 (13) amino, (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) di-C<sub>1-6</sub>  
 alkylamino, (16) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic  
 30 amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub>  
 aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group,  
 (17) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl,  
 carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-  
 35 carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub>  
 aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub>  
 aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle



- carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfinyl,
- 5 (18) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carboxamido,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carboxamido,  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonylamino and  $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonylamino, (19) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$
- 10 alkyl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyloxy,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyloxy,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy and (20) sulfo;
- 15  $R^{5a}$  is (a) a  $C_{6-14}$  aryl or a 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms,
- 20 (2)  $C_{1-3}$  alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated  $C_{2-6}$  alkynyl, (8) optionally halogenated  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (10) optionally
- 25 halogenated  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (14) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-
- 30 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryloxy-carbonyl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyloxy-
- 35 carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbamoyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl,  $C_{1-6}$



alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, or (b) a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl or C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) a C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl or 5- to 14-membered aromatic heterocyclic group containing 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur and oxygen atoms in addition to carbon atoms, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1') halogen atoms, (2') C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3') nitro, (4') cyano, (5') optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6') optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7') optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8') optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9') optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10') optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11') hydroxy, (12') amino, (13') mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14') di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15') 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16') acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub>



- alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17') acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18') acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19') sulfo, (20') C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21') C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy, (2) halogen atoms, (3) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (4) nitro, (5) cyano, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (8) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (11) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (12) hydroxy, (13) amino, (14) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (16) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (17) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (18) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (19) acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-



carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy and (20) sulfo; and

R<sup>6</sup> is a hydrogen atom or a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl; and

ring A is a benzene ring which may be further

- 5 substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2) C<sub>1-3</sub> alkylenedioxy, (3) nitro, (4) cyano, (5) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (6) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl, (7) optionally halogenated C<sub>2-6</sub> alkynyl, (8)
- 10 optionally halogenated C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl, (9) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, (10) optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, (11) hydroxy, (12) amino, (13) mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (14) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, (15) 5- to 7-
- 15 membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and 5- to 10-
- 20 membered aromatic heterocyclic group, (16) acyl selected from the group consisting of formyl, carboxy, carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>3-6</sub> cycloalkyl-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl-
- 25 carbonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy-carbonyl, C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyloxy-carbonyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbonyl, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyl, 5- or 6-membered heterocycle carbamoyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, (17) acylamino selected from the group consisting of formylamino, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carboxamido, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonylamino and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonylamino, (18)
- 30 acyloxy selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbonyloxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyloxy, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carbamoyloxy, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl-carbamoyloxy and nicotinoyloxy, (19) sulfo, (20) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and (21) C<sub>6-14</sub> aryloxy.
- 35 3. A compound of Claim 1, wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each is a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted, or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to



8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted.

4. A compound of Claim 1,  $R^3$  is an aromatic group which may be substituted.

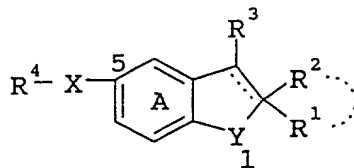
5. A compound of Claim 1, wherein  $R^4$  is (i) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted or (ii) an acyl.

6. A compound of Claim 1, wherein X is an oxygen atom.

10 7. A compound of Claim 1, wherein Y is an oxygen atom.

8. A compound of Claim 7, wherein a group of the formula:  $-X-R^4$  is substituted on the 5-position of the benzofuran ring.

15 9. A compound of Claim 1, which is a compound of the formula:



wherein each symbol is as defined in Claim 1, or a salt thereof.

10. A compound of Claim 1, wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is a  
 20  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3  
 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1)  
 $C_{6-14}$  aryl, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylthio, (4)  
 hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) mono-  
 $C_{6-14}$  arylamino, (8) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (9) di- $C_{6-14}$   
 25 arylamino, (10) carboxy, (11)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfonyl, (12)  
 $C_{6-14}$  arylsulfonyl, (13)  $C_{1-6}$  alkylsulfinyl, (14)  $C_{6-14}$   
 arylsulfinyl and (15) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic  
 amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents  
 selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$   
 30 aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, or  
 $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon  
 atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring  
 which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents



selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl,  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic heterocyclic group;

- 5  $R^3$  is a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (5) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and (6) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group;
- 10  $R^4$  is (i)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl substituted by a phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, 2-thienyl, 3-thienyl, 2-pyridyl, 3-pyridyl, 4-pyridyl, 2-quinolyl, 3-quinolyl, 1-isoquinolyl, 1-indolyl, 2-indolyl or 2-benzothiazolyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) halogen atoms, (2)  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl, (3)  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, (4) hydroxy, (5) amino, (6) mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (7) di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, (8) carboxy and (9) 5- to 7-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl and 5- to 10-membered aromatic group, which  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl may be further substituted by carboxy or  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy-carbonyl, or
- 20 (ii) a  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{3-6}$  cycloalkyl-carbonyl,  $C_{6-14}$  aryl-carbonyl or  $C_{7-16}$  aralkyl-carbonyl group, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms,  $C_{1-6}$  alkyl,  $C_{1-6}$  alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino, di- $C_{1-6}$  alkylamino and carboxy;
- 25  $X$  is an oxygen atom;
- 30  $Y$  is an oxygen atom; and



ring A is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino.

11. A compound of Claim 1, wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each is a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, mono-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-C<sub>6-14</sub> arylamino, carboxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl and C<sub>6-14</sub> arylsulfinyl, or

R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a piperidine which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>6-14</sub> aryl and C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl;

R<sup>3</sup> is a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino;

R<sup>4</sup> is (i) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl substituted by a phenyl or pyridyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and carboxy, or

(ii) an acyl of the formula: -(C=O)-R<sup>5'</sup> wherein R<sup>5'</sup> is a phenyl or phenyl-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, hydroxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino, di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and carboxy;

X is an oxygen atom;

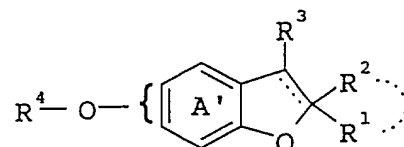
Y is an oxygen atom; and

ring A is a benzene ring which may be further



substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of halogen atoms, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, optionally halogenated C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, amino, mono-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino.

12. A compound of Claim 1 which is a compound of the formula:



wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each is C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl which may be substituted by 6-membered saturated cyclic amino substituted by a phenyl, or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a piperidine substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or a C<sub>7-16</sub> aralkyl;

R<sup>3</sup> is (i) a hydrogen atom, or (ii) a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of (1) C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl, (2) di-C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylamino and (3) 6-membered saturated cyclic amino which may be substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl,

R<sup>4</sup> is (i) a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of nitro and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl-carboxamido, (ii) a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl group substituted by 1 to 3 of phenyl, quinolyl or pyridyl, each of which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylthio, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfonyl and C<sub>1-6</sub> alkylsulfinyl, which C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl or C<sub>2-6</sub> alkenyl group may be further substituted by a phenyl, carboxy or C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy-carbonyl, or

(iii) an acyl of the formula: -(C=O)-R<sup>5''</sup>

wherein R<sup>5''</sup> is phenyl substituted by a C<sub>1-6</sub> alkoxy; and



ring A' is a benzene ring which may be further substituted by 1 to 3 C<sub>1-6</sub> alkyl.

13. A compound of Claim 1 which is

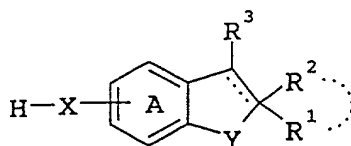
3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,2,4,6,7-pentamethyl-2,3-dihydrobenzofuran,

3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran-5-yl 4-methoxybenzoate,

3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-2,4,6,7-tetramethylbenzofuran,

3-(4-isopropylphenyl)-5-(4-methoxybenzyloxy)-1',4,6,7-tetramethylspiro[benzofuran-2(3H),4'-piperidine], or a salt thereof.

14. A process for producing of a compound of Claim 1, which comprises reacting a compound of the formula:



wherein each symbol is as defined in Claim 1, or a salt thereof with a compound of the formula: R<sup>4</sup>-L wherein L represents a leaving group and R<sup>4</sup> is as defined in Claim 1, or salt thereof.

15. A pharmaceutical composition which comprises a compound of Claim 1.

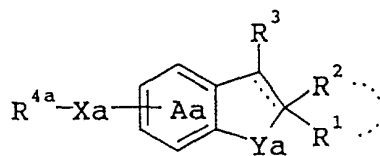
16. A composition of Claim 15 which is an agent for suppressing neurodegeneration.

17. A composition of Claim 15 which is an agent for suppressing  $\beta$ -amyloid toxicity.

18. A composition of Claim 15 which is an agent for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases.

19. An agent for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases which comprises a compound of the formula:





wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> each represents a hydrogen atom or a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted;

R<sup>3</sup> represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl which may be substituted or an aromatic group which may be substituted;

R<sup>4a</sup> represents an aromatic group which may be substituted, an aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted or an acyl;

Xa represents an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom which may be oxidized;

Ya represents an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom which may be oxidized or an imino which may be substituted;

---- represents a single bond or a double bond;

ring Aa represents a benzene ring which may be further substituted apart from (i) the group of the formula:

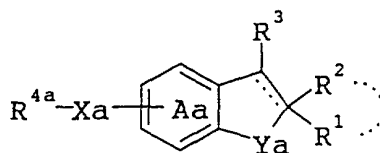
-Xa-R<sup>4a</sup> wherein each symbol is as defined above, and (ii) an amino which may be substituted, provided that when Xa and Ya are oxygen atoms and ---- is a single bond, R<sup>4</sup> is not an acyl, or a salt thereof.

20. An agent of Claim 19 which is an agent for suppressing  $\beta$ -amyloid toxicity.

21. An agent of Claim 19 which is an agent for preventing and/or treating neurodegenerative diseases.

22. A method for suppressing neurodegeneration in mammal, which comprises administering to said mammal an effective amount of a compound of the formula:





wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each represents a hydrogen atom or a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted;

$R^3$  represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl which may be substituted or an aromatic group which may be substituted;

$R^{4a}$  represents an aromatic group which may be substituted, an aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted or an acyl;

Xa represents an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom which may be oxidized;

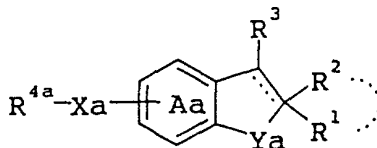
Ya represents an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom which may be oxidized or an imino which may be substituted;

---- represents a single bond or a double bond;

ring Aa represents a benzene ring which may be further substituted apart from (i) the group of the formula:

-Xa- $R^{4a}$  wherein each symbol is as defined above, and (ii) an amino which may be substituted, provided that when Xa and Ya are oxygen atoms and ---- is a single bond,  $R^4$  is not an acyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof with a pharmaceutically acceptable excipient, carrier or diluent.

23. Use of a compound of the formula:



wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each represents a hydrogen atom or a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or



$R^1$  and  $R^2$  form, taken together with the adjacent carbon atom, a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted;

5  $R^3$  represents a hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl which may be substituted or an aromatic group which may be substituted;

$R^{4a}$  represents an aromatic group which may be substituted, an aliphatic hydrocarbon group which may be substituted or an acyl;

10  $Xa$  represents an oxygen atom or a sulfur atom which may be oxidized;

$Ya$  represents an oxygen atom, a sulfur atom which may be oxidized or an imino which may be substituted;

---- represents a single bond or a double bond;

15 ring  $Aa$  represents a benzene ring which may be further substituted apart from (i) the group of the formula:

$-Xa-R^{4a}$  wherein each symbol is as defined above, and (ii) an amino which may be substituted,

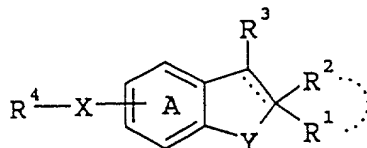
provided that when  $Xa$  and  $Ya$  are oxygen atoms and ----

20 is a single bond,  $R^4$  is not an acyl, or a salt thereof for manufacturing a pharmaceutical composition for suppressing neurodegeneration.



## ABSTRACT

A compound of the formula:



wherein  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  each is H or a hydrocarbon group which may be substituted, or  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  form a 3- to 8-membered carbo or heterocyclic ring which may be substituted;  $R^3$  is H, a lower alkyl which may be substituted or an aromatic group which may be substituted;  $R^4$  is (1) an aromatic group which may be substituted, (2) an aliphatic hydrocarbon group substituted by an aromatic group which may be substituted, which hydrocarbon group may be further substituted or (3) an acyl; X and Y each is oxygen or sulfur which may be oxidized; and ring A is a benzene ring which may be further substituted, or a salt thereof, is useful for an agent for suppressing neurodegeneration.



(modified)

PTO/SB/106 (8-96)

Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032  
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

## Declaration and Power of Attorney For Patent Application

### 特許出願宣言書及び委任状

### Japanese Language Declaration

### 日本語宣言書

下記の氏名の発明者として、私は以下の通り宣言します。

As a below named inventor, I hereby declare that:

私の住所、私書箱、国籍は下記の私の氏名の後に記載された通りです。

My residence, post office address and citizenship are as stated next to my name.

下記の名称の発明に関して請求範囲に記載され、特許出願している発明内容について、私が最初かつ唯一の発明者（下記の氏名が一つの場合）もしくは最初かつ共同発明者であると（下記の名称が複数の場合）信じています。

I believe I am the original, first and sole inventor (if only one name is listed below) or an original, first and joint inventor (if plural names are listed below) of the subject matter which is claimed and for which a patent is sought on the invention entitled

Heterocyclic Compounds,

Their Production and Use ✓

上記発明の明細書（下記の欄でx印がついていない場合は、本書に添付）は、

the specification of which is attached hereto unless the following box is checked:

☐ 月 日に提出され、米国出願番号または特許協定条約  
国際出願番号を \_\_\_\_\_ とし、  
(該当する場合) \_\_\_\_\_ に訂正されました。

☒ was filed on June 4, 1998 ✓  
as United States Application Number or  
PCT International Application Number  
PCT/JP98/02482 ✓ and was amended on  
\_\_\_\_\_ (if applicable).

私は、特許請求範囲を含む上記訂正後の明細書を検討し、内容を理解していることをここに表明します。

I hereby state that I have reviewed and understand the contents of the above identified specification, including the claims, as amended by any amendment referred to above.

私は、連邦規則法典第37編第1条56項に定義されるとおり、特許資格の有無について重要な情報を開示する義務があることを認めます。

I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, Section 1.56.



## Japanese Language Declaration (日本語宣言書)

私は、米国法典第35編119条(a)-(d)項又は365条(b)項に基づき下記の、米国外の国の少なくとも一カ国を指定している特許協力条約365(a)項に基づく国際出願、又は外国での特許出願もしくは発明者証の出願についての外国優先権をここに主張するとともに、優先権を主張している、本出願の前に出願された特許または発明者証の外国出願を以下に、枠内をマークすることで、示しています。

### Prior Foreign Application(s)

外国での先行出願

(Number)

(番号)

9/148325

(Country)

(国名)

Japan

(Day/Month/Year Filed)

(出願年月日)

05/06/1997

I hereby claim foreign priority under Title 35, United States Code, Section 119 (a)-(d) or 365(b) of any foreign application(s) for patent or inventor's certificate, or 365(a) of any PCT International application which designated at least one country other than the United States, listed below and have also identified below, by checking the box, any foreign application for patent or inventor's certificate, or PCT International application having a filing date before that of the application on which priority is claimed.

Priority Not Claimed

優先権主張なし

私は、第35編米国法典119条(e)項に基づいて下記の米国外特許出願規定に記載された権利をここに主張いたします。

(Application No.)

(出願番号)

(Filing Date)

(出願日)

私は、下記の米国法典第35編120条に基づいて下記の米国外特許出願に記載された権利、又は米国外を指定している特許協力条約365条(c)に基づき権利をここに主張します。また、本出願の各請求範囲の内容が米国法典第35編112条第1項又は特許協力条約で規定された方法で先行する米国外特許出願に開示されていない限り、その先行米国外出願書提出日以降で本出願書の日本国内または特許協力条約国際提出日までの期間中に入手された、連邦規則法典第37編1条56項で定義された特許資格の有無に関する重要な情報について開示義務があることを認識しています。

(Application No.)

(出願番号)

(Filing Date)

(出願日)

(Application No.)

(出願番号)

(Filing Date)

(出願日)

私は、私自身の知識に基づいて本宣言書中で私が行なう表明が真実であり、かつ私の入手した情報と私の信じているところに基づき表明が全て真実であると信じていること、さらに故意になされた虚偽の表明及びそれと同等の行為は米国法典第18編第1001条に基づき、罰金または拘禁、もしくはその両方により処罰されること、そしてそのような故意による虚偽の声明を行えば、出願した、又は既に許可された特許の有効性が失われることを認識し、よってここに上記のごとく宣誓を致します。

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, Section 119(e) of any United States provisional application(s) listed below.

(Application No.)

(出願番号)

(Filing Date)

(出願日)

I hereby claim the benefit under Title 35, United States Code, Section 120 of any United States application(s), or 365(c) of any PCT International application designating the United States, listed below and, insofar as the subject matter of each of the claims of this application is not disclosed in the prior United States or PCT International application in the manner provided by the first paragraph of Title 35, United States Code Section 112, I acknowledge the duty to disclose information which is material to patentability as defined in Title 37, Code of Federal Regulations, Section 1.56 which became available between the filing date of the prior application and the national or PCT International filing date of application.

(Status: Patented, Pending, Abandoned)

(現況: 特許許可済、係属中、放棄済)

(Status: Patented, Pending, Abandoned)

(現況: 特許許可済、係属中、放棄済)

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patent issued thereon.



(modified)

PTO/SB/106 (8-96)

Approved for use through 9/30/98. OMB 0651-0032  
Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are required to respond to a collection of information unless it displays a valid OMB control number.

### Japanese Language Declaration (日本語宣言書)

委任状: 私は下記の発明者として、本出願に関する一切の  
手続を米特許商標局に対して遂行する弁理士または代理人  
として、下記の者を指名いたします。(弁理士、または代理  
人の氏名及び登録番号を明記のこと)

POWER OF ATTORNEY: As a named inventor, I hereby appoint  
the following attorney(s) and/or agent(s) to prosecute this  
application and transact all business in the Patent and Trademark  
Office connected therewith (list name and registration number)

Philippe Y. RIESEN (Reg. No. 35,657), Miriam SOHN (Reg. No. 35,368)

Send Correspondence to:

送付先

Philippe Y. Riesen  
Intellectual Property Department  
Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd.  
17-85, Jusohonmachi 2-chome  
Yodogawa-ku, Osaka 532-8686 Japan

直接電話連絡先: (名前及び電話番号)

Direct Telephone Calls to: (name and telephone number)

Philippe Y. Riesen  
(Phone) 81-6-6300-6124 (Japan)  
(Fax) 81-6-6300-6601  
(E-mail) riesen\_philippe@takeda.co.jp

唯一または第一発明者名

Full name of sole or first inventor

Shigenori OHKAWA

発明者の署名

日付

Inventor's signature

Date

Shigenori Ohkawa

November 2, 1999

住所

Residence

45-20, Makamicho 6-chome, Takatsuki, OSAKA 569-1121 Japan JPX

国籍

Citizenship

Japan

私書箱 Takeda Chemical Industries (IPD)

Post Office Address

17-85, Jusohonmachi 2-chome, Yodogawa-ku, OSAKA 532-8686 Japan

第二共同発明者

Full name of second joint inventor, if any

Masaki SETOH

第二共同発明者

日付

Second inventor's signature

Date

Masaki Setoh

November 2, 1999

住所

Residence

18-D73-302, Tsukumodai 5-chome, Suita, OSAKA 565-0862 Japan JPX

国籍

Citizenship

Japan

私書箱 Takeda Chemical Industries (IPD)

Post Office Address

17-85, Jusohonmachi 2-chome, Yodogawa-ku, OSAKA 532-8686 Japan

(第三以降の共同発明者についても同様に記載し、署名をす  
ること)

(Supply similar information and signature for third and subsequent  
joint inventors.)



## Attached Sheet to the Declaration

3-00

第三共同発明者		Full name of third joint inventor, if any	
		<u>Mitsuru KAKIHANA</u>	
発明者の署名	日付	Third inventor's signature	date
		<u>Mitsuru Kakihana</u>	<u>November 2, 1999</u>
住所		Residence	
		4-2, Tsukushigaoka 9-chome, Kita-ku, Kobe, <u>HYOGO</u> 651-1212 Japan <u>JPX</u>	
国籍		Citizenship	
		Japan	
私書箱		Post Office Address	
		Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd., IPD, 17-85, Jusohonmachi 2-chome, Yodogawa-ku, OSAKA 532-8686 JAPAN	
第四共同発明者		Full name of fourth joint inventor, if any	
		<u>Masahiro OKURA</u>	
発明者の署名	日付	Fourth inventor's signature	date
		<u>Masahiro Okura</u>	<u>November 2, 1999</u>
住所		Residence	
		6-3-A, Shibutani 2-chome, Ikeda, <u>OSAKA</u> 563-0028 Japan <u>JPX</u>	
国籍		Citizenship	
		Japan	
私書箱		Post Office Address	
		Takeda Chemical Industries, Ltd., IPD, 17-85, Jusohonmachi 2-chome, Yodogawa-ku, OSAKA 532-8686 JAPAN	
第五共同発明者		Full name of fifth joint inventor, if any	
発明者の署名	日付	Fifth inventor's signature	date
住所		Residence	
国籍		Citizenship	
私書箱		Post Office Address	
第六共同発明者		Full name of sixth joint inventor, if any	
発明者の署名	日付	Sixth inventor's signature	date
住所		Residence	
国籍		Citizenship	
私書箱		Post Office Address	

4-00